Drives and controls, motors and mechanical power transmission catalogue 2017
Drives and controls, motors and mechanical power transmission catalogue

What's new in 2017
Authorised value providers
Drives and motors packages
Low voltage AC drives
Other drives, accessories and services
AC motors
Motors and generators service and PC tools
Mechanical power transmission
Useful engineering information
What’s new in 2017

**ABB drives for HVAC, ACH580**
The ACH580 replaces the ACH550 and is initially available from 0.75 to 250 kW. The ACH580 brings new levels of ease of use and HVAC functionality, as well as adding safe-torque off connections as standard. New motor control algorithms bring accurate high performance to induction motors, permanent magnet and SynRM motors, allowing the catching of spinning loads and power dip performance. The superior control algorithms are used to control the SynRM motor to achieve specific fan powers without having to resort to more exotic motor types. The wider power range allows more applications to be tackled, while the new user interface makes it easier to install. Backwards compatibility is maintained with the footprint and the terminal layouts, minimising changes to existing drawings and making upgrade simple. The ACH580 is a member of the new “all compatible” drive platform, ABB’s philosophy of common drives architecture that features the same control panel, harmonised parameters and functions, universal accessories and engineering tools.

**ABB general purpose medium voltage drive, ACS580MV**
The drive is built on ABB’s common drives architecture and enables a smooth transition to other drives within the portfolio, such as the ABB general purpose drive, ACS580, or the ABB industrial drives, ACS880. The drive share the same user interfaces, the new assistant control panel, PC tools, options and energy saving calculations, enabling users to use the knowledge gained with the ACS580MV drive, and vice versa. The cabinet-built ACS580MV drive is designed to control pumps and fans in various industries, and is equipped with standard features that simplify ordering and delivery and reduce cost for installation and commissioning. The drive features a new generation of cascaded h-bridge technology which offers superior mitigation of harmonics in a compact and light design. Other built-in functions like power loss ride-through and automatic restart ensure reliable, trouble-free operation and high robustness against weak network performance. Features like redundant cooling fans and an advanced preventive warning system ensure highest reliability even in harsh industrial environments.

**Electrical heating with the DCT880**
ABB has adapted the firmware inside its DC drive range to generate a unit for industrial heating applications. The unit is suitable for inductive and resistive loads and for infrared or ultraviolet heaters. Different load configurations such as delta, star, star with neutral and open delta are just a few of the options.
What’s new in 2017

**ABB general purpose drives extend offering**

The ABB general purpose drive, ACS580, now features the ACS580-04 module for cabinet installation and the ACS580-07 - an ABB built cabinet range. This takes the ABB general purpose drive to 500 kW. The cabinet drive range will be extended to lower power in late 2017. Being a general purpose drive, the concept is limited to popular options which leads to easier ordering, generating shorter delivery times. For a more tailored solution, ABB offers the ACS880 range, which can be selected and configured as required.

**Enhanced ATEX compliant motor drive packages for hazardous areas**

As one of the few manufacturers that can offer drives and motors, it has long been possible for ABB to offer compliant motor drive packages under ATEX 2014/34/EU certification. The extensive range of motors on offer for these packages has been increased to include IE3 efficiency rated motors, bringing lower energy usage to the ATEX arena. The drive package is also enhanced. Having received ATEX approval for the built-in safe-torque off (STO), ABB has added an ATEX certified isolated thermistor relay (FPTC-02) that fits inside the drive. This allows a simple wall mounted drive to protect the motor without the need for external contactors or thermistor relays, so removing the need for a cabinet.

**ABB drive for water and wastewater, ACQ580**

The ACQ580 is initially available from 0.75 to 250 kW. The drive is IP21 or IP55 and has an extended power range compared to the present offering. The ACQ580 is easy to use and brings new levels of functionality to the water sector, as well as adding safe-torque off (STO) connections as standard (removing the need for contactors). New motor control algorithms bring accurate high performance control to induction motors, permanent magnet motors and SynRM, as well as the ABB WIMES motor. The ACQ580 is part of ABB’s “all compatible” drive platform; a philosophy of common drives architecture that features the same control panel, harmonised parameters and functions, universal accessories and engineering tools.

**WIMES-compliant motor**

A motor specifically designed for water and wastewater applications meets the UK’s Water Industry Mechanical and Electrical Specification (WIMES). The motors are packed with features that offer greater protection against the environmental conditions found in the water and wastewater industry.
What’s new in 2017

Register your ABB drive and protect your investment
You can register your drive using the Drivebase smartphone app. Drivebase allows you to read product manuals and find ABB contact details, sends you service recommendations and enables quick troubleshooting through fault code analysis.

ABB softstarters
ABB’s softstarter range are available via the drives business. This means the best possible advice can be given about when to utilise a drive or a softstarter. ABB’s soft starter range includes PSTX, PST(B), PSE, PSR, PSS. They cover any motor application from 3 A to 2160 A and are ideal for infrequent starts where a drive is not commercially viable.

PROFIsafe enabled drives
With the new Automation Builder engineering tool, ABB’s ACS500-S safety PLC and the ACS880 drive, it is possible to create an Ethernet-based network topology including standard control and safety control. This network will use PROFIsafe over PROFINet to implement control and safety. Together with the ACS880’s FSO safety modules, this means a larger number of safety and control requirements can be met with less wiring.

ABB drives go wireless – keypads with Bluetooth connectability
Drivetune is the smart mobile app enabling wireless communication to ABB low voltage drives. The drive needs to have the Bluetooth enabled keypad fitted. You will be able to startup your drive and commission with your phone using simple settings and widgets. The appealing dashboard shows intuitively drive status, performance and configuration.

Unlike traditional control panels, Drivetune makes it possible to connect with any services and data available on the Internet in parallel to online drive communication, providing powerful tools for any start-up and troubleshooting task. In future it will have drive settings that can be easily stored into cloud-based repositories. There are two versions of the Drivetune app, one for Android and the other for iOS operating systems.

Plug in to SIMATIC environment
ABB offers an add-in to the Siemens SIMATIC PLC PC tool environment. The add-in allows ABB drives to appear on the SIMATIC network and tree structures. ABB drives can now network as effectively as a Siemens drive into existing or new PLC environments and installations, thus preventing the need to take Siemens drives where a PLC exists. Most of the ABB drives range is supported by this add-in, including the ACS880 and ACS580 drives. The drives can communicate over Profibus or Profinet.

ABB general purpose drives, ACS480
The ABB general purpose drive range is extended to include a drive with a different hardware form factor. The drive firmware is targeting fan/pump specialists, and will compliment the ABB general purpose drive range, being stocked by ABB’s authorised value providers for fast and efficient delivery.
What’s new in 2017

ABB HES880, a ruggedised water-cooled drive for demanding applications

HES880 is an inverter section for hybrid electric vehicles operating in harsh and demanding areas such as quarries, as well as open deck marine applications, where maximum efficiency, redundancy, weight and size are critical. The drive is rated from 55 to 510 kW, features an IP67 enclosure, and is able to operate from -40 to +85 degrees with 100 percent humidity. Fully enclosed water-cooled technology with its high vibration tolerance (4 g vibrations and 30 g shocks), the HES880 offers rugged, reliable performance. It can be used in inverter mode to control the torque and speed of a traction motor. When used in its generator mode, it can control the DC-link voltage in an electrical drivetrain. The DC/DC mode enables use with a battery or super capacitor.

New washdown motor meets exacting hygiene standards

ABB has launched its IEC stainless steel washdown motor for the strict hygiene standards demanded by the food and beverage industry. The stainless steel casing, rated to IP69K, means the motor can resist direct water sprays at 100 bar and 80 degrees centigrade, allowing food production equipment to be cleaned in place. The motor’s resistance to corrosion and ability to withstand harsh conditions enhances the reliability of the production time, ensuring maximum uptime.

Condition monitoring solution for LV motors

ABB’s smart sensor picks up data on vibration, temperature and other parameters and uses it to reduce motor downtime, extend lifetime and lower energy use. (see page 111)

In-situ visual inspections for motors and generators

ABB offers visual inspection services for motors and generators with the rotor in-situ. A super-slim robotic inspection crawler - ABB Air Gap Inspector - moves in the air gap between the rotor and stator, covering the entire length of the core. It provides a video feed of the stator and rotor inner surfaces, windings, wedges, stator teeth, air ducts, rotor support blocks and parts of the end windings.
Authorised value providers deliver sales, support, service and engineering expertise in seamless cooperation with ABB. Being strategically located throughout the UK and Ireland, they bring ABB’s products and services directly to your site along with the same technical knowledge and back-up, combined with the best equipped repair and maintenance facilities in Europe. All providers undertake extensive and on-going training in all aspects of motors, drives and services. This provides the consistency of support, wherever in the UK and Ireland you are located.

**Authorised value providers - Drives**
Offer one of the largest stocks of AC drives, from 0.18 kW to 500 kW, available off-the-shelf.

1. ACS Drives & Control Systems
   Ireland
   Tel: +353 (0)44 934 0242
2. Advantage Control
   Northern Ireland
   Tel: 028 4461 3782
3. APDS
   South West
   Tel: 0117 982 2049
4. Central Group
   Merseyside
   Tel: 0151 546 6000
5. EDC (Scotland)
   Scotland
   Tel: 0141 812 3222
6. Gibbons Engineering Group
   East Anglia
   Tel: 01621 868 138
7. Halcyon Drives
   Yorkshire and Greater Manchester
   Tel: 0113 236 1509
8. iDrives
   South
   Tel: 01483 766 555
9. Inverter Drive Systems
   East Midlands
   Tel: 0115 944 1036
10. MKE Engineering Group
    South East
    Tel: 01795 438 436
11. Quantum Controls
    North East
    Tel: 01661 835 566
12. Sentrtridge Control
    Midlands
    Tel: 024 7655 3303

Call authorised value providers on:
07000 ABB AVP (07000 222 287)

**Authorised value providers - Motors**
Offer electric motors up to 1,000 kW.

1. AAR Powerdrives
   West Midlands
   Tel: 01384 440 0800
2. APDS
   South West
   Tel: 0117 982 2049
3. Beta Power Engineering
   Cheshire
   Tel: 0161 432 9995
4. Campbell Electric Motors
   Ireland
   Tel: +353(0) 1 4628 333
5. Central Group
   Merseyside
   Tel: 0151 546 6000
6. CovElec (Leics)
   Leicestershire
   Tel: 0116 269 8111
7. EDC (Scotland)
   Scotland
   Tel: 0141 812 3222
8. EMR Silverthorn
   Middlesex
   Tel: 020 8903 1390
9. H.G. Rewinds
   Staffordshire
   Tel: 01785 262525
10. Halcyon
    West Yorkshire
    Tel: 0113 236 1509
11. Heasell Electromechanical Services
    Hertfordshire
    Tel: 01763 243369
12. JJ Loughran
    Northern Ireland
    Tel: 028 8676 2295
13. MKE Engineering Group
    Kent
    Tel: 01795 438 436
14. Quantum Controls
    North East
    Tel: 01661 835 566

Search “AVP energy toolkit”
Proactive drives and motors maintenance programmes keep you competitive by minimising disruption to your production.

The many drives and motors used in industry have a high degree of reliance placed upon them and often perform critical duties and have a high in-service value. A failure of either asset can result in loss of production and revenues, as well as having safety and environmental consequences. To reduce the risk and consequences of failure, the drive and motor must be properly maintained at the right times in their life cycle.

**Life cycle services**
The services offered by the authorised value providers span the entire value chain, from the moment a customer makes the first enquiry to disposal and recycling of either the motor or the drive. Throughout the value chain, the providers offer training, technical support and customised contracts.

**Pre-purchase**
The authorised value providers offer a range of services that help guide the customers to the right products for their applications.

**Order and delivery**
Orders can be placed directly with the authorised value providers, for timely deliveries including express delivery.

**Installation and commissioning**
While many customers have the resource to undertake installation and commissioning on their own, the authorised value providers offer professional installation and start-up services.

**Operation and maintenance**
From site surveys to preventive maintenance and reconditioning of drives and motors, ABB has all the options covered to keep its customers’ processes operational.

**Upgrade and retrofit**
An existing ABB drive or motor can often be upgraded to the latest model to improve the performance of the application.

**Replacement and recycling**
Authorised value providers can advise on the best replacement drive or motor while ensuring that the existing assets are disposed of in a way that meets all local environmental regulations. ISO14001 certificates can also be provided.

** Entire value chain services**
The main services available throughout the entire value chain include:
- Training
- Technical support
- Contracts
Drives and controls, motors and mechanical power transmission catalogue
## Drives and motors packages

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Introduction</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Standard motor and VSD package</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Synchronous reluctance motor-drive package</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ATEX compliant</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deck winch</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cranes and hoists</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aggregates</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cooling tower direct drive-motor</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ABB is one of the only companies that makes both variable speed drives and low voltage AC motors. As such it is well equipped to offer customers a perfectly designed, tested and approved matched pair, for whatever the motor-driven application.

In addition, ABB has devised a selection of bespoke drives and motors packages aimed at specific industry applications.

ABB has also developed special firmware versions that support the hardware packages. Pre-developed firmware for winches, cranes (including anti-sway), winders, spinning machines and others exist already, reducing development time when designing a complex system.

Packages can extend beyond matching a motor and a drive. Other components, many of which are featured in this catalogue, also form part of the drive train – from bearings, couplings and gearboxes to programmable logic controllers (PLCs), switches and fusegear.
Drives and motors packages
Standard motor and VSD package

From 1st January 2017, motors from 0.75 kW to 375 kW, must meet either the IE3 efficiency level (driven direct online) or the IE2 level if fitted with a variable speed drive (VSD), in order to comply with the European Minimum Energy Performance Standard (EU MEPS).

ABB offers a wide range of VSDs, all of which can be fitted to IE2 motors to deliver efficient, reliable and compliant motor control, satisfying regulations.

ABB offers packages for IE3 and IE4 induction motors. The motors are suitable for harsh environments, marine, crane and ATEX applications, as well as many others.

### ABB machinery drive
ACS355
- 0.37 kW to 22 kW
- FlashDrop - parameter programming with drive still in its box
- Sequence programming designed for food and beverage and materials handling applications
- ACS880-M04 and ACS380 machinery drives also available

### ABB general purpose drives
ACS310
- 0.37 kW to 22 kW
- Pump and soft pump and fan control (PFC and SPFC)
- Pipe cleaning (anti-jam) and pipe fill functions

### ABB drive for HVAC
ACH580
- 0.75 kW to 250 kW
- Dedicated to HVAC
- Rapid start-up, trouble-free use, easy interfacing
- Built-in BACnet

### ABB industrial drive
ACS880
- Intuitive control panel and PC tool
- Direct torque control (DTC) for precise open- and closed-loop control
- Built-in safety features for simplified configuration
- Communication with all major automation networks

- Removable memory unit for easy drive commissioning and replacement
- Energy optimiser and energy efficiency information for monitoring and saving energy

See details on page 35

ACS580
- 0.55 kW to 500 kW
- Wide power range in wall-mounted IP21 and IP55 variants
- Sensorless vector and scalar control

See details on page 43

See details on page 47

See details on page 56
General performance motors combine convenience and easy handling seamlessly with ABB’s engineering expertise, while providing standard variants and modifications. The motors can be tailored according to the specific needs of end-users and OEMs.

Highlights
- 0.06 kW to 355 kW
- One year warranty
- IE2 & IE3
- 2, 4 & 6 pole designs

Process performance motors are the flagship of ABB’s standard low voltage motors. This range provides the most comprehensive, versatile set of motors for the process industries and heavy-duty applications which are dependent on continuous reliability, lowest possible environmental impact and life cycle costs.

Highlights
- 0.09 kW to 1,000 kW
- Three years warranty and an option to extend to five years
- IE2, IE3 & IE4
- All variant codes available for process industry applications
Drives and motors packages
Synchronous reluctance motor-drive package

Get the best of both worlds. The efficiency advantages of permanent magnet technology together with the simplicity and service-friendliness of an induction motor platform. Each motor-drive package combines proven stator technology and innovative magnet-free rotor design motor, a best-in-class drive and advanced software to offer a complete, optimised solution.

The table below shows a quick selection for 1500 rpm motors (ABB can perform an optimised selection if required). Although all of SynRMs motors are 4-pole, the VSD handles the control for the differing speeds. SynRM are installed into a wide range of applications, from paper machines to crushers, offering improved control, maintainability and robustness.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Motor kW</th>
<th>High Output SynRM 1500rpm</th>
<th>ACH580 0.75 kW to 250 kW</th>
<th>ACS580 0.55 kW to 500 kW</th>
<th>ACQ580 0.55 kW to 250 kW</th>
<th>ACS880 0.55 kW to 3200 kW</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.1</td>
<td>M3AL 90 LA 4</td>
<td>ACH580-01-03A3-4</td>
<td>ACS580-01-03A3-4</td>
<td>ACQ580-01-03A3-4</td>
<td>ACS880-01-03A3-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>M3AL 90 LB 4</td>
<td>ACH580-01-04A0-4</td>
<td>ACS580-01-04A0-4</td>
<td>ACQ580-01-04A0-4</td>
<td>ACS880-01-04A0-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2</td>
<td>M3AL 90 LD</td>
<td>ACH580-01-07A2-4</td>
<td>ACS580-01-07A2-4</td>
<td>ACQ580-01-07A2-4</td>
<td>ACS880-01-07A2-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>M3AL 100 LB 4</td>
<td>ACH580-01-07A2-4</td>
<td>ACS580-01-07A2-4</td>
<td>ACQ580-01-07A2-4</td>
<td>ACS880-01-07A2-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>M3AL 100 LD</td>
<td>ACH580-01-12A6-4</td>
<td>ACS580-01-12A6-4</td>
<td>ACQ580-01-12A6-4</td>
<td>ACS880-01-12A6-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.5</td>
<td>M3AL 132 SMA 4</td>
<td>ACH580-01-12A6-4</td>
<td>ACS580-01-12A6-4</td>
<td>ACQ580-01-12A6-4</td>
<td>ACS880-01-12A6-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.5</td>
<td>M3AL 132 SMB 4</td>
<td>ACH580-01-017A-4</td>
<td>ACS580-01-017A-4</td>
<td>ACQ580-01-017A-4</td>
<td>ACS880-01-017A-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>M3BL 160 MLB 4</td>
<td>ACH580-01-038A-3</td>
<td>ACS580-01-038A-3</td>
<td>ACQ580-01-038A-3</td>
<td>ACS880-01-038A-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>M3BL 200 MLF 4</td>
<td>ACH580-01-061A-3</td>
<td>ACS580-01-061A-3</td>
<td>ACQ580-01-061A-3</td>
<td>ACS880-01-061A-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37</td>
<td>M3BL 250 SMF 4</td>
<td>ACH580-01-088A-4</td>
<td>ACS580-01-088A-4</td>
<td>ACQ580-01-088A-4</td>
<td>ACS880-01-088A-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>250</td>
<td>M3BL 315 LKA 4</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td>ACS580-04-585A-3</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td>ACS880-04-585A-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>315</td>
<td>M3BL 315 LKC 4</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td>ACS580-04-650A-3</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td>ACS880-04-650A-3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ACH580
- 0.75 kW to 250 kW
- Dedicated to HVAC
- Rapid start-up, trouble-free use, easy interfacing
- Built-in BACnet

See details on page 47

ACS580
- 0.55 kW to 500 kW
- Wide power range in wall-mounted IP21 and IP55 variants
- Sensorless vector and scalar control

See details on page 43

ACQ580
- 0.55 kW to 250 kW
- Dedicated drive for water and wastewater applications

See details on page 51

ACS880
- 0.55 kW to 3200 kW
- Direct torque control (DTC) for precise open- and closed-loop control
- Built-in safety features

See details on page 56
IE4 SynRM
The IE4 design offers super premium efficiency motors in a chassis that is identical to standard IEC induction motor frame sizes and fixings, offering a direct replacement package with a better efficiency. The variable speed drive (VSD) + IE4 SynRM motor package has a better efficiency than a VSD + IE4 induction motor package.

- Aluminium frame 132
  - 5.5 kW to 15 kW
- Cast iron frame 160 to 315
- 7.5 kW to 315 kW
- 40 percent lower losses compared to induction designs
- No magnets
- Cool running rotor
- Improved bearing system reliability
- Easy to service
- Simple to retrofit on induction motor applications due to identical physical size

High Output (HO) SynRM
High Output (HO) design takes advantage of the 40 percent fewer losses, allowing ABB to offer SynRM in a motor frame that can be two frames smaller than a conventional induction motor, while providing more power in a smaller package. SynRM weighs less than the equivalent induction motor, so applications where space and weight are premium are ideal for the HO design.

- Aluminium frame 90 to 132
  - 1.1 kW to 37 kW
- Cast iron frame 160 to 315
  - 17 kW to 350 kW
- Achieve the same output with a motor that’s up to two frame sizes smaller
- Enables smaller, lighter and more cost-efficient machine designs
- Ideal for applications where space and weight factors are critical
Drives and motors packages
ATEX compliant

An ATEX approved AC motor and drive combination gives safe, economical power combined with effective control.

By choosing an ATEX compliant motor-drive package, end-users can be confident that it is optimised for their application, complies to ATEX 2014/34/EU and is commercially beneficial, giving more available power for your money.

ABB industrial drive, ACS880
- ATEX approved STO, no need for contactor
- ATEX certified PTC relay fits inside
- FPTC-02 ATEX certified option module
- Direct torque control (DTC) proven motor control platform
- All major types of drive topology covered - 6-pulse, 12-pulse, 4-quadrant, low harmonic, air-cooled and water-cooled
- Built-in safety module

ABB general purpose drive, ACS550
- 0.37 kW to 355 kW
- Assistant control panel providing intuitive use of the drive
- Patented swinging choke for superior harmonic reduction
- Sensorless vector and scalar control

ABB machinery drive, ACS355
- IP20 as standard (UL type 1 as option)
- IP66/69 variants
- Advanced functionality with sequence programming
- Configuration of unpowered drive in two seconds
- Compact installation
- STO as standard

Annex
See details on page 56

*ACS580
- 0.55 kW to 500 kW
- Superior keypad
- IP21, IP55
- Patented swinging choke
- Sensorless vector
- STO as standard
- CPTC ATEX certified option modules

*Check with ABB regarding ATEX availability.

See details on page 35

See details on page 56

See details on page 35

18 Drives and controls, motors and mechanical power transmission catalogue
ABB hazardous area low voltage motors
- Flameproof motors, frame size 80 to 450
- 0.18 kW to 710 kW
- Non-sparking motors, frame size 71 to 450
- 0.09 kW to 1,000 kW
- Loadability curves optimised for ABB drives

ABB Ex tD/DIP motors
- Ex tD/DIP motors, frame size 71 to 450
- 0.09 kW to 1,000 kW
- IP55 or IP65 for non-conductive dust
- IP65 for conductive dust
- Loadability curves optimised for ABB drives
Drives and motors packages
ATEX compliant

The route to EC Declaration of Conformity for ABB low voltage AC drives and motors (ATEX 2014/34/EU)

Important note: This flowchart only applies to standard ABB motors
Type testing means thermistor relays are not mandatory but to allow protection against stall conditions they are recommended for a safe installation. Use ATEX approved thermistor measurement.
ACS880/ACS580 do not require a contactor as the ATEX approved STO can be used to disconnect.
ACS880/ACS580 do not require an external PTC relay, as an internal option can be used.

If the motor voltage is ≤ 500 V

Check the frame size:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Frame Size</th>
<th>Motor needs</th>
<th>AC drive needs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Up to IEC 250...</td>
<td>Motor needs</td>
<td>...a standard motor is ok</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IEC 280 to 315...</td>
<td>motor needs</td>
<td>...insulated non-drive end</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>bearings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IEC 355 and above...</td>
<td>motor needs</td>
<td>...insulated non-drive end</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>bearings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>...common mode filtering</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>installed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If the motor voltage is 500 to 600 V

Motor needs reinforced winding insulation OR AC drive needs du/dt filtering fitted

In addition, check the frame size.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Frame Size</th>
<th>Motor needs</th>
<th>AC drive needs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Up to IEC 250...</td>
<td>Motor needs</td>
<td>...if a du/dt filter is selected for the drive (as above) a standard motor is ok</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IEC 280 to 315...</td>
<td>motor needs</td>
<td>...insulated non-drive end</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>bearings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IEC 355 and above...</td>
<td>motor needs</td>
<td>...insulated non-drive end</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>bearings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>...common mode filtering</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>installed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If the motor voltage is 600 to 690 V

Motor needs reinforced winding insulation AND AC drive needs du/dt filtering fitted

In addition, check the frame size.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Frame Size</th>
<th>Motor needs</th>
<th>AC drive needs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Up to IEC 250...</td>
<td>Motor needs</td>
<td>...if a du/dt filter is selected for the drive (as above) a standard motor is ok</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IEC 280 to 315...</td>
<td>motor needs</td>
<td>...insulated non-drive end</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>bearings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IEC 355 and above...</td>
<td>motor needs</td>
<td>...insulated non-drive end</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>bearings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>...common mode filtering</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>installed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Please check motor load capacity curves to ensure correct dimensioning of the motor.

Motor to be equipped with thermal control to ensure Ex-temperature class.

Additional testing required to obtain EC Declaration of Conformity.
ABB offers motors and drives for anchoring and mooring winches, RoRo gate ramp winches and tugboat winches. A deck winch motor-drive package consists of an ABB low voltage marine motor with mechanical disc brakes and an ABB industrial drive, ACS880. Both are designed to stand up to the operations and installations found on many sea-going vessels. SynRMs have now been successfully used on many winch systems.

ABB’s marine certified motors and drives fulfil marine and offshore requirements and the design and operation comply with regulations from all major classification societies. ABB’s electrical drive solutions improve reliability and offer advantages over hydraulic systems. They enable more precise rope control and reduce operating noise. No hydraulics means no hydraulic fluid concerns, fewer parts, reduced installation space and lower maintenance needs.

**Control stand integration**
- Connect up to three control stands and one wireless radio controller to a single drive
- Connect via drive I/O, PLC or fieldbus communications

**ABB industrial drive, ACS880**
- Built-in winch control program
- The combination of direct torque control (DTC) and winch control program eliminate the need for motor shaft encoders and load cell sensors in the winch gearbox
- Ensures smooth winch start-up, eliminating the motor start-up voltage and current peaks on the ship’s electrical network
- SynRM control as standard
- Dynamic braking with integrated brake chopper and external braking resistor
- Stepless speed and torque operation reduces winch noise
- Direct bulkhead installation or in cabinets (marine certified)

**Low voltage marine motors with mechanical disc brakes**
- Exact nominal data on rating plate helps optimise motor operation especially when motor encoder is not used
- Specially designed low wear shaft seals
- SynRM available

- Corrosion resistance improved with zinc primer painting
- IP56 open deck protection class
- Optional heating element and temperature supervision
- Ex motors available
ABB has been generating crane-specific software for over 20 years such that today virtually any crane type can be controlled. The SynRM brings more accurate control, with 0.01 percent speed accuracy in open-loop. It has 40 percent fewer losses compared to induction motors, while the high output version can be two frames smaller. The crane software operates with the ABB industrial drive, ACS880, which provides premium motor control, including torque at zero speed, through the use of direct torque control (DTC).

### Highlights
- Sensorless anti-sway control
- Mechanical brake control
- Master-follower operations, ideal for long travel operations
- Synchro control, synchronises the operation of main hooks
- Direct torque control (DTC) ABB's signature motor control algorithm
- Safe torque off (STO) as standard
- Built-in additional drive based programmable safety to SIL 3 / PL e
- Safety PLCs incorporating ProﬁSafe, to allow direct communications to the built-in safety module
- Control via I/O of fieldbuses
- Custom crane solutions via a PLC library for larger crane systems

ABB has a long history of controlling machinery in the aggregates industry, including powering the world's largest mobile mineral crusher, which operates in an open cast mine in Australia. Several different drives can be used to optimise every part of an aggregates plant. The ABB industrial drive, ASC880, for instance, has an extensive power range and topologies to suite every kind of application. Featuring the world renowned direct torque control (DTC) motor control platform, the robust and reliable ACS880 handles high torque loads and transients. The ABB general purpose drive can be used for less demanding machines, fans and pumps. The ABB machinery drive is ideal where precision is needed, for example, to pack or palletise materials. ABB's drive technology is complimented by a range of motors which boast the best in robust design and performance, especially suited to the aggregates industry. ABB can also integrate the entire operation with its PLC and HMI range, incorporating control with the TUV certified safety systems built into the drives.

**ABB drives highlights**
- Wide range of powers to suite specific aggregate applications
- Liquid-cooled designs to minimise ingress of dust
- IP55 variants where required, or flange mounting for easy heat and dust management
- Supreme motor control, especially good at high torque loads
- All-compatible user interfaces, so all drive families operate the same with the same tools
- Designed to work optimally with ABB motors
- SynRM control as standard
- PLC’s and HMI range to integrate controls and safety across the operation

**ABB motors highlights**
- Reinforced insulation
- Standard and enhanced dust seals
- Bearing monitoring
- Enhanced IP classes
- Improved paint systems
The ABB motor-drive package for cooling towers comprises an ABB permanent magnet motor with an ABB industrial drive, ACS880. Together, the package delivers precise fan control without the need for a gearbox, even under low load or speed conditions often experienced in cooling tower applications. ABB’s RPM AC permanent magnet motor has a high power and torque density ratio which is needed to achieve the sustained low speed required for cooling tower operation. It is designed to retrofit into existing gearbox footprints within the cooling tower to allow swap-out in less than six hours.

**ABB industrial drive, ACS880 and RPM**
- Designed to drop directly into existing gearbox mounting patterns
- Retrofit can be accomplished in under six hours
- Eliminates gearbox, lowers vibration and system noise
- Permanent magnet control greatly increases operating efficiencies even under lightly loaded conditions, typical in fan applications at low speeds
- Temperature rise in the motor is considerably lower
- A power dense package increases motor life compared to a conventional induction motor system
- Special weather sealing ensures maximum life expectancy
## Low voltage AC drives

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Drives feature finder</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ABB micro drives</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ABB machinery drives</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ABB general purpose drives for fans and pumps</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ABB general purpose drives</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ABB drives for HVAC</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ABB drives for water and wastewater</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ABB industrial drives</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ABB industrial drive variants</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Drives feature finder

The table highlights the differences between the various ABB drives families. It also lists some of the key features of the different ABB drives. However, the table is not exhaustive and if you are seeking a feature which does not appear in the table, please contact ABB for information.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drive range</th>
<th>ABB micro drives [ACS55 - p33], [ACS150 - p32]</th>
<th>ABB machinery drives [ACS555 - p35]</th>
<th>ABB general purpose drives for fans and pumps [ACS310 - p39]</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Voltage &amp; power</strong></td>
<td>Details or additional notes</td>
<td>(1-ph 100 - 120 V: 0.18 - 0.37 kW 1-ph 200 - 240 V: 0.18 - 2.2 kW 3ph 380 - 480 V: 0.37 - 4.0 kW) [ACS150]</td>
<td>(1-ph 200 - 240 V: 0.37 - 2.2 kW 3-ph 200 - 240 V: 0.37 - 11 kW 3-ph 380 - 480 V: 0.37 - 22 kW) [ACS310]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Other rectifier options</strong></td>
<td>(assume 6-pulse as standard)</td>
<td>Low harmonics regenerative (4Q)</td>
<td>Low harmonics non-regenerative (2Q)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>EMC compliance</strong></td>
<td>(EN 61800-3-2004)</td>
<td>No EMC filter</td>
<td>Loch (ACS55)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Harmonic filter / choke / active</strong></td>
<td>(EN 61000-3-4)</td>
<td>Choke (AC or DC)</td>
<td>Swinging choke (better harmonic performance)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Enclosure class</strong></td>
<td>Module - panel mountable (IP20 minimum)</td>
<td>Wall-mounted (IP21 or equivalent)</td>
<td>Free-standing, floor-standing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Mechanical construction</strong></td>
<td>Cabinet built by ABB</td>
<td>(DIN mount + screw)</td>
<td>(Nema 1, ACS150)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cooling method</strong></td>
<td>Direct air-cooling</td>
<td>Water-cooling</td>
<td>Through panel/Range mount</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dynamic braking chopper</strong></td>
<td>Range of resistors available from ABB</td>
<td>(ACS55)</td>
<td>(ACS150)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Switching frequency</strong></td>
<td>4 to 16 kHz</td>
<td>4 to 12 kHz</td>
<td>4 to 16 kHz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Motor control</strong></td>
<td>DTC (open/closed loop)</td>
<td>Sensorless vector</td>
<td>Scalar, VVF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Programmability</strong></td>
<td>Parameter programming</td>
<td>uses dip (ACS55), (ACS150)</td>
<td>[code] (IM)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Start-up assistance and help</strong></td>
<td>Aids to commissioning and diagnostics</td>
<td>(assistant panel)</td>
<td>(assistant panel)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Real-time clock</strong></td>
<td>With assistant control panel</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>I/O built-in</strong></td>
<td>Modbus embedded</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Remote monitoring</strong></td>
<td>Report info and status remotely</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Safety options</strong></td>
<td>Emergency stop (CAT.0, CAT.1)</td>
<td>Safe torque-off (SIL2/PL d)</td>
<td>Safe torque-off (SIL3/PL e)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PC tools</strong></td>
<td>DriveConfig tool (programme in box)</td>
<td>DriveWindow Light</td>
<td>DriveAP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Industry specific products</strong></td>
<td>HVAC</td>
<td>Food and beverage</td>
<td>Machinery / OEMs in general</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Water and wastewater</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* = standard \[O = option, internal or fitted \[R = option, external \[* = not available \[f = can be bookcase or flat mounted \[r = relay output, t= transistor output, c = configurable to be input or output
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ABB general purpose drives (ACS350 - pX3)</th>
<th>ABB drives for HVAC (ACS550 - p47)</th>
<th>ABB drives for water and wastewater (ACSQ80 - p51)</th>
<th>ABB industrial drives (ACS600-11-14-31 - p67)</th>
<th>ABB industrial drives cabinet-drive (ACS880-07-17 - p82)</th>
<th>ABB industrial drives and drive modules (ACS880-01 - p56)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3-ph 380 - 480 V: 0.55 - 500 kW</td>
<td>3-ph 208 - 240 V: 0.75 - 75 kW</td>
<td>3-ph 380 - 480 V: 1.1 - 250 kW</td>
<td>3-ph 400 V: 11 - 1400 kW</td>
<td>3-ph 400 V: 45 - 1400 kW</td>
<td>3-ph 230 V: 0.55 - 75 kW</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ACS800 - 800-14)</td>
<td>(ACS0-11)</td>
<td>(ACS0-31)</td>
<td>(ACS800-07-17)</td>
<td>(ACS800-45-1400)</td>
<td>(ACS800-05-1400)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(remove EMC screw)</td>
<td>(remove EMC screw)</td>
<td>(remove EMC screw)</td>
<td>(remove EMC screw)</td>
<td>(remove EMC screw)</td>
<td>(remove EMC screw)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(800-01)</td>
<td>(800-31)</td>
<td>(800-31)</td>
<td>(800-04 R78)</td>
<td>(800-31)</td>
<td>(800-31)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(580-04)</td>
<td>(580-01)</td>
<td>(580-01)</td>
<td>(580-14)</td>
<td>(580-14)</td>
<td>(580-14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(580-04)</td>
<td>(580-01)</td>
<td>(580-01)</td>
<td>(580-14)</td>
<td>(580-14)</td>
<td>(580-14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(PPS, 580-01)</td>
<td>(PPS)</td>
<td>(PPS)</td>
<td>(800-31)</td>
<td>(800-31)</td>
<td>(800-31)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(580-01)</td>
<td>(580-01)</td>
<td>(580-01)</td>
<td>(800-14)</td>
<td>(800-14)</td>
<td>(800-14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(variable-speed fan)</td>
<td>(variable-speed fan)</td>
<td>(variable-speed fan)</td>
<td>(variable-speed fan)</td>
<td>(variable-speed fan)</td>
<td>(variable-speed fan)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(variable-speed fan)</td>
<td>(variable-speed fan)</td>
<td>(variable-speed fan)</td>
<td>(variable-speed fan)</td>
<td>(variable-speed fan)</td>
<td>(variable-speed fan)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(to 22 kW), thereafter</td>
<td>(to 22 kW), thereafter</td>
<td>(to 22 kW), thereafter</td>
<td>(to 22 kW), thereafter</td>
<td>(to 22 kW), thereafter</td>
<td>(to 22 kW), thereafter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 to 12 kHz</td>
<td>4 to 12 kHz</td>
<td>4 to 12 kHz</td>
<td>4 to 12 kHz</td>
<td>4 to 12 kHz</td>
<td>4 to 12 kHz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DTC</td>
<td>DTC</td>
<td>DTC</td>
<td>DTC</td>
<td>DTC</td>
<td>DTC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 / 2</td>
<td>2 / 2</td>
<td>2 / 2</td>
<td>3+(2) / 2+(2)</td>
<td>2+(3) / 2+(1) extra possible</td>
<td>2+(3) / 2+(1) extra possible</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 / 3+(2r+1t)</td>
<td>6 / 3+(2r+1t)</td>
<td>6 / 3+(2r+1t)</td>
<td>6 / 3+(2r+1t)</td>
<td>6 / 3+(2r+1t)</td>
<td>6 / 3+(2r+1t)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- isolated and configurable</td>
<td>- isolated and configurable</td>
<td>- isolated and configurable</td>
<td>- isolated and configurable</td>
<td>- isolated and configurable</td>
<td>- isolated and configurable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(via CMOD), R6 and above</td>
<td>(via CMOD), R6 and above</td>
<td>(via CMOD), R6 and above</td>
<td>(via CMOD), R6 and above</td>
<td>(via CMOD), R6 and above</td>
<td>(via CMOD), R6 and above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xx</td>
<td>xx</td>
<td>xx</td>
<td>xx</td>
<td>xx</td>
<td>xx</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xx</td>
<td>xx</td>
<td>xx</td>
<td>xx</td>
<td>xx</td>
<td>xx</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xx</td>
<td>xx</td>
<td>xx</td>
<td>xx</td>
<td>xx</td>
<td>xx</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

All ABB drives are CE marked.
Other global approvals such as UL, cUL, CSA,
C-Tick, GOST-R also applicable.

xx = ACS800 and ACS880 can be loaded with industry specific code, like crane, winder, winch, spinnning etc.
+++ = A wide range of encoder interfaces to suit high performance applications.

Drives and controls, motors and mechanical power transmission catalogue 29
Low voltage AC drives
ABB micro drives

0.18 kW to 2.2 kW, ACS55
Motor control method - scalar

200/240 V, 1-phase supply, 3-phase output, 0.18 kW - 2.2 kW
100/120 V, 1-phase supply, 3-phase output, 0.18 kW - 0.37 kW

What is an ABB micro drive, ACS55?
The ABB micro drive meets the requirements of OEMs, machinery builders and panel builders. It is a component that is purchased, together with other components, from a distributor. ABB micro drive is so small and simple that users of contactors and softstarters can switch to the benefits of variable-speed control. The ACS55 is a simple drive, programmed by switches. Extended programming is possible via a PC if required, as is programming without power.

Highlights
- Quick and easy installation - less than five minutes
- User interface via three rotary switches and a further eight on/off function DIP switches located on panel front
- Can be programmed via DriveConfig if needed to access extended functions (useful to OEMs)
- Compact size and narrow shape
- Ideal drive for DIN-rail mounting
- Two mounting orientations
- 110 V single phase - input gives 240V, 3-phase output
- IP20 as standard
- Potentiometer option
- Integral EMC filter for 1st environment (EN61800-3), unrestricted distribution (C1)
- Optimised switching frequency for low noise (up to 16 kHz silent motor)

Where can it be used?
- Washing machines
- Mixers
- Pizza ovens
- Vacuum cleaners
- Sliding doors
- Dryers
- Dishwashers
- Treadmills
- Car washing machines
- Rotating billboards
- Electric gates

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Advantage</th>
<th>Benefit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>No programming is required</td>
<td>Inverter parameter settings with DIP switches and potentiometers. Extended programming is possible via DriveConfig if needed</td>
<td>Faster set up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compact size and narrow shape</td>
<td>Up to 0.37 kW, 45 mm width; 2.2 kW, 67.5 mm width</td>
<td>Easy-to-use drive for new users</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Removable mounting clip</td>
<td>Removable clip allows DIN-rail and wall-mounting from back and side of the unit</td>
<td>Less space required for installation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DriveConfig kit</td>
<td>Fast and safe configuration of an unpowered drive</td>
<td>Flexible and easy mounting, box case or flat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EMC</td>
<td>First environment, C1 EMC filters as standard (‘E’ model)</td>
<td>Simple programming for high volume OEMs - programming in the box, no mains power needed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatic switching frequency</td>
<td>Increases switching frequency automatically when drive temperature is decreased</td>
<td>Provides lowest possible noise without derating the drive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>110-240 V AC, single-phase supplies</td>
<td>Output always capable of full 240 V, 3-phase, regardless of supply voltage</td>
<td>Can easily replace single-phase cap start motors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RoHS compliance</td>
<td>Compliance achieved during 2007</td>
<td>Environmentally friendly drives</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Low voltage AC drives

**ABB micro drives**

ACS55 – Ratings, types, voltages, prices and dimensions

### Dimensions and weights

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Frame</th>
<th>H1</th>
<th>H2</th>
<th>W</th>
<th>D</th>
<th>Weight</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>size</td>
<td>mm</td>
<td>mm</td>
<td>mm</td>
<td>mm</td>
<td>Kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>170</td>
<td>146.5</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>128</td>
<td>0.65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>170</td>
<td>146.5</td>
<td>67.5</td>
<td>128</td>
<td>0.70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>194</td>
<td>171</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>159</td>
<td>1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>226</td>
<td>203</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>159</td>
<td>1.1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 200/240 V, 1-phase supply, 3-phase output

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nominal kW</th>
<th>Input current A</th>
<th>Output current A</th>
<th>Max output A</th>
<th>Frame</th>
<th>Fuse A Type</th>
<th>Heat dissipation W</th>
<th>Cooling requirements m³/h</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Price</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>With EMC filter</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.18</td>
<td>4.4</td>
<td>1.4</td>
<td>2.1</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>Nat Vent</td>
<td>ACS55-01E-01A4-2</td>
<td>£98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.37</td>
<td>6.9</td>
<td>2.2</td>
<td>3.3</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>Nat Vent</td>
<td>ACS55-01E-02A2-2</td>
<td>£108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.75</td>
<td>10.8</td>
<td>4.3</td>
<td>6.5</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>Nat Vent</td>
<td>ACS55-01E-04A3-2</td>
<td>£129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>18.2</td>
<td>7.6</td>
<td>11.4</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>74</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>ACS55-01E-07A6-2</td>
<td>£179</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>9.8</td>
<td>14.7</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>103</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>ACS55-01E-09A8-2</td>
<td>£209</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Without EMC filter</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.18</td>
<td>4.4</td>
<td>1.4</td>
<td>2.1</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>Nat Vent</td>
<td>ACS55-01N-01A4-2</td>
<td>£93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.37</td>
<td>6.9</td>
<td>2.2</td>
<td>3.3</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>Nat Vent</td>
<td>ACS55-01N-02A2-2</td>
<td>£102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.75</td>
<td>10.8</td>
<td>4.3</td>
<td>6.5</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>Nat Vent</td>
<td>ACS55-01N-04A3-2</td>
<td>£120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>18.2</td>
<td>7.6</td>
<td>11.4</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>74</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>ACS55-01N-07A6-2</td>
<td>£187</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>9.8</td>
<td>14.7</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>103</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>ACS55-01N-09A8-2</td>
<td>£196</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Ensure minimum installation space is provided, see User’s Manual for details*

### 100/120 V, 1-phase supply, 3-phase output

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nominal kW</th>
<th>Input current A</th>
<th>Output current A</th>
<th>Max output A</th>
<th>Frame</th>
<th>Fuse A Type</th>
<th>Heat dissipation W</th>
<th>Cooling requirements m³/h</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Price</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>With EMC filter</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.18</td>
<td>6.4</td>
<td>1.4</td>
<td>2.1</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>Nat Vent</td>
<td>ACS55-01E-01A4-1</td>
<td>£107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.37</td>
<td>9.5</td>
<td>2.2</td>
<td>3.3</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>Nat Vent</td>
<td>ACS55-01E-02A2-1</td>
<td>£119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Without EMC filter</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.18</td>
<td>6.4</td>
<td>1.4</td>
<td>2.1</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>Nat Vent</td>
<td>ACS55-01N-01A4-1</td>
<td>£103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.37</td>
<td>9.5</td>
<td>2.2</td>
<td>3.3</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>Nat Vent</td>
<td>ACS55-01N-02A2-1</td>
<td>£112</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Ensure minimum installation space is provided, see User’s Manual for details*

### Options and interfaces

**Potentiometer**

Potentiometer with two switches: start/stop and forward/reverse direction. No external power source is needed for the potentiometer, connects directly to drive I/O.

**DriveConfig programming with no power**

To increase the number of applications possible with the ACS55, the DriveConfig kit can be used to access an extended parameter set. It is still possible to programme in the usual way, if these extended features are not required. DriveConfig also allows programming in the box without power.
Low voltage AC drives
ABB micro drives
0.37 kW to 4 kW, ACS150

Motor control method - scalar
200/240 V, 1-phase supply, 0.37 kW - 2.2 kW
200/240 V, 3-phase supply, 0.37 kW - 2.2 kW
380/480 V, 3-phase supply, 0.37 kW - 4 kW

What is an ABB micro drive, ACS150?
The ABB micro drive meets the requirements of OEMs, machinery builders and panel builders. It is a component that is purchased, together with other components, from a logistical distributor. ABB micro drives are designed to encourage users of contactors and softstarters to move to the benefits of variable-speed control. The ACS150 extends the capability of the ACS55 (page 30), by adding an extended range of power frames and programmability. The ACS150 can solve more difficult tasks like PID functionality. To retain the simplicity of an ABB micro drive, the ACS150 does not have a serial communications interface or extended options but does have a fixed keypad and speed control potentiometer.

Highlights
– PID controller built-in
– DC hold stop ensures stationary motor shaft
– IR compensation improves starting torque for heavy loads
– Parameter lock prevents tampering by unauthorised staff
– DIN rail or screw mounting as standard
– IP20 enclosure
– Fixed basic control panel
– Two-year warranty
– Flashdrop - parameter programming whilst drive still in its box - excellent for OEMs
– Protected against wiring errors: shows fault if power cable is inadvertently connected to motor terminals
– Automatic noise reduction
– Optional short or long parameter mode for standard or advanced users
– Unified height across the power range simplifies cabinet design

Where can it be used?
ACS150 can be used to control less demanding components in any machine, fans or pumps or anywhere where a fixed speed motor needs to go to variable-speed control. The functionality of the drive is designed to compliment the ABB machinery drives and ABB motion control drives.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Advantage</th>
<th>Benefit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>FlashDrop*</td>
<td>Faster and easier drive set-up and commissioning for volume manufacturing. Programming in the box</td>
<td>No need for high voltage safe programming areas Parameters can be hidden for clarity Programme the drive during machine production build-up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fixed interface</td>
<td>Simple drive with comfortable and robust interface Easy to navigate parameter structure</td>
<td>Integrated control panel with clear LCD, backlight and buttons for editing and control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fixed potentiometer</td>
<td>Intuitive speed setting</td>
<td>Integrated potentiometer. Settings shown on the control panel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Programmable functions</td>
<td>Useful control functions like PID, accelerating rates and start/stop modes included</td>
<td>Take control of the motor and reduce cost in the installation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Built-in EMC filter</td>
<td>No need for external filtering</td>
<td>2nd environment built-in filter. Complying with IEC 61800-3 as standard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Built-in brake chopper</td>
<td>Reduced cost, saved space and simple wiring</td>
<td>100 percent braking capability</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flexible installation</td>
<td>Optimised layout and efficient cabinet space usage</td>
<td>Screw, DIN-rail, sideways and side-by-side mounting Unified height and depth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drive protection</td>
<td>Latest solutions to protect the drive and offer troublefree use and the highest quality</td>
<td>The drive protects itself when power is connected to the motor terminals. I/O protected against short-circuit. Coated boards included as standard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brand labelling</td>
<td>Drive logo, control panel logo, manuals and box can be printed with machine builders logo and name</td>
<td>Drives and packaging badged to your design</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RoHS compliance</td>
<td>Compliance achieved during 2007</td>
<td>Environmentally friendly drives</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* For details of FlashDrop, see user interfaces in ABB machinery drive section (page 38)
Low voltage AC drives
ABB micro drives

ACS150 – Ratings, types, voltages and prices

200/240 V, 1-phase supply voltage

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nominal kW</th>
<th>Nominal output current A</th>
<th>Max output A</th>
<th>Frame</th>
<th>Fuse Type gG</th>
<th>Heat dissipation W</th>
<th>Cooling requirements m³/h</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>List Price £</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0.37</td>
<td>2.4</td>
<td>4.2</td>
<td>R0</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>+Nat Vent</td>
<td>ACS150-01E-02A4-2</td>
<td>£105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.75</td>
<td>4.7</td>
<td>8.2</td>
<td>R1</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>46</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>ACS150-01E-04A7-2</td>
<td>£123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1</td>
<td>6.7</td>
<td>11.7</td>
<td>R1</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>71</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>ACS150-01E-08A7-2</td>
<td>£155</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>7.5</td>
<td>13.1</td>
<td>R2</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>73</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>ACS150-01E-07A5-2</td>
<td>£174</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2</td>
<td>9.8</td>
<td>17.2</td>
<td>R2</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>96</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>ACS150-01E-09A8-2</td>
<td>£208</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

+ Ensure enough space around the unit - refer to the User’s Manual for details

200/240 V, 3-phase supply voltage

3-phase, 240 V is available for customers supplying the North American market. Please enquire for details.

380/480 V, 3-phase supply voltage

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nominal kW</th>
<th>Nominal output current A</th>
<th>Max output A</th>
<th>Frame</th>
<th>Fuse Type gG</th>
<th>Heat dissipation W</th>
<th>Cooling requirements m³/h</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>List Price £</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0.37</td>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>2.1</td>
<td>R0</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>+Nat Vent</td>
<td>ACS150-03E-01A2-4</td>
<td>£167</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.55</td>
<td>1.9</td>
<td>3.3</td>
<td>R0</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>+Nat Vent</td>
<td>ACS150-03E-01A9-4</td>
<td>£177</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.75</td>
<td>2.4</td>
<td>4.2</td>
<td>R1</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>ACS150-03E-02A4-4</td>
<td>£193</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1</td>
<td>3.3</td>
<td>5.6</td>
<td>R1</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>ACS150-03E-03A3-4</td>
<td>£212</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>4.1</td>
<td>7.2</td>
<td>R1</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>ACS150-03E-04A1-4</td>
<td>£231</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2</td>
<td>5.6</td>
<td>9.8</td>
<td>R1</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>61</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>ACS150-03E-05A6-4</td>
<td>£331</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>7.3</td>
<td>12.8</td>
<td>R1</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>74</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>ACS150-03E-07A3-4</td>
<td>£398</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>8.8</td>
<td>15.4</td>
<td>R1</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>94</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>ACS150-03E-08A8-4</td>
<td>£453</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

+ Ensure enough space around the unit - refer to the User’s Manual for details

The drive can be fitted with the NEMA 1 kit for easy wall-mounting and convenient protection, see user interfaces in ABB machinery drive section, page 38.
Low voltage AC drives
ABB micro drives

**ACS150 – Dimensions, I/O and options**

### Dimensions and weights

#### Cabinet-mounted drives, wall mounted drives

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Frame size</th>
<th>IP20 (UL open)</th>
<th>NEMA 1</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>H1</td>
<td>H2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R0</td>
<td>169</td>
<td>202</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R1</td>
<td>169</td>
<td>202</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R2</td>
<td>169</td>
<td>202</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **H1** = Height without fastenings and clamping plate
- **H2** = Height with fastenings but without clamping plate
- **H3** = Height with fastenings and clamping plate
- **H4** = Height with fastenings and NEMA 1 connection box
- **H5** = Height with fastenings, NEMA 1 connection box and hood

- **W** = Width
- **D** = Depth

### Options available

- Input and output chokes
- Brake chopper resistors (all drives in the ACS150 range have integral chopper)
- First environment EMC filters - footprint style
- Low leakage EMC filters < 30 mA leakage
- FlashDrop - programming without power
- NEMA kit allows installations to be neater and provides mechanical support for ganged cables

### User interfaces

The ACS150 has a simple user interface, consisting of I/O connections and a fixed programming keypad. An integrated speed control potentiometer is also provided.

### Typical I/O connections

- **0 - 20 mA** Ground cable screen at sourcing end
- **0 - 10 V** can be used by connecting pot to 10 V, GND and AI, DIP switch to ‘u’
- **Const. speed 1**
- **Const. speed 2**
- **Change ramp**
- **Fwd/rev**
- **Start/stop**
- **Fault**

**DIP configuration NPN**
PNP is possible

All I/O shown as default settings. Can be configured to other set-ups.
Low voltage AC drives

ABB machinery drive

0.37 kW to 22 kW, ACS355

Motor control method - scalar, vector (open and closed loop)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Voltage</th>
<th>Single-phase</th>
<th></th>
<th>Three-phase</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>200/240 V</td>
<td>0.37 kW - 2.2 kW</td>
<td>0.37 kW - 11 kW</td>
<td>0.37 kW - 22 kW</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

What is an ABB machinery drive?

ABB machinery drives are designed for the machine building sector. In serial type manufacturing the consumed time per unit is critical. The drive is designed to be optimal in terms of installation, setting parameters, available machinery features and commissioning. The basic product is user-friendly, yet provides high intelligence. The drive offers diverse functionality to cater for the most demanding needs. The drive is also equipped with a dual-channel safe torque-off interface to SIL3/PL e.

Highlights

– FlashDrop - parameter programming with drive still in its box - excellent for OEMs
– Sequence programming designed for food and beverage and materials handling applications - Eight-steps included
– Unified height and depth across the power range simplifies cabinet design
– Protected against wiring errors: shows fault if power cable is inadvertently connected to motor terminals
– Automatic noise reduction
– Own branding possible for large users

Where can it be used?

ABB machinery drives are designed to meet the requirements of an extensive range of machinery applications. The drive is ideal for food and beverage, material handling, textile, printing, rubber and plastics and woodworking applications. The higher IP66 class variant meets all of the relevant hygiene requirements for the food and beverage industry.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Advantage</th>
<th>Benefit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>FlashDrop*</td>
<td>Faster and easier drive set-up and commissioning for volume manufacturing. Programming with no power</td>
<td>Fast, safe and troublefree method to set up and commission without powering up the drive - patented</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Safe torque-off</td>
<td>Built-in compliance to new machinery directive</td>
<td>SIL3/PL e certified dual channel input - TÜV approved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sequence programming</td>
<td>Application specific 8-state programming with comprehensive triggering conditions, 16 conditions with option code</td>
<td>Logic programming included as standard. Reduces the need for external PLC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Common DC link</td>
<td>Connection to existing DC power sources (patented)</td>
<td>Easy integration into high performance machines</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User interfaces</td>
<td>Wide range, including Assistant panel</td>
<td>Cost efficient approach - meets requirements of OEM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fieldbus</td>
<td>Extensive range of industrial fieldbus option modules available</td>
<td>Connectability to all of the most popular fieldbuses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24 V ‘live keypad’ operation</td>
<td>Connect 24 V to the drive via the MPOW option</td>
<td>Keep fieldbus, control card and I/O healthy while able to remove the main supply - safer maintenance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Built-in EMC filter</td>
<td>2nd environment filter complying with IEC 61800-3 as standard</td>
<td>No extra space, parts, time or cost required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Built-in brake chopper</td>
<td>100 percent braking capability</td>
<td>Reduces cost, saves space and simplifies wiring</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drive protection</td>
<td>Latest solutions to protect the drive and offer troublefree use and the highest quality</td>
<td>The drive protects itself when power is connected to the motor terminals. I/O protected against short-circuit. Coated boards included as standard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IP66/69k enclosure option</td>
<td>Makes drive suitable for hose down applications</td>
<td>Meets food hygiene standards in a wall-mounted enclosure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brand labelling</td>
<td>Drive logo, control panel logo, manuals and box can be printed with machine builder’s logo and name</td>
<td>Drives and packaging badged to your design</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RoHS compliance</td>
<td>Compliance achieved during 2007</td>
<td>Environmentally friendly drives</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* For details of FlashDrop, see user interfaces in ABB machinery drive section, page 38

0.37 kW to 22 kW, ACS355

Motor control method - scalar, vector (open and closed loop)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Voltage</th>
<th>Single-phase</th>
<th></th>
<th>Three-phase</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>200/240 V</td>
<td>0.37 kW - 2.2 kW</td>
<td>0.37 kW - 11 kW</td>
<td>0.37 kW - 22 kW</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 200/240 V, 1-phase supply voltage

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>kW</th>
<th>Output current A</th>
<th>Max output A</th>
<th>Frame</th>
<th>Fuse A</th>
<th>Heat dissipation W</th>
<th>Cooling requirements</th>
<th>Type (code shown is IP20)</th>
<th>IP20 list price without control panel*</th>
<th>IP66 list price with control panel**</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0.37</td>
<td>2.4</td>
<td>4.2</td>
<td>R0</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>48</td>
<td>Nat Vent</td>
<td>ACS355-01E-02A4-2</td>
<td>£117</td>
<td>n/a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.75</td>
<td>4.7</td>
<td>8.2</td>
<td>R1</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>ACS355-01E-04A7-2</td>
<td>£146</td>
<td>n/a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1</td>
<td>6.7</td>
<td>11.7</td>
<td>R1</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>97</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>ACS355-01E-06A7-2</td>
<td>£172</td>
<td>n/a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>7.5</td>
<td>13.1</td>
<td>R2</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>101</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>ACS355-01E-07A5-2</td>
<td>£168</td>
<td>n/a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2</td>
<td>9.8</td>
<td>17.2</td>
<td>R2</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>124</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>ACS355-01E-09A8-2</td>
<td>£230</td>
<td>n/a</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Ensure enough space around the unit - refer to the User's Manual for details
* Note: IP20 drives require a keypad for parameter alteration, it can then be removed if required

** Note: IP66 drives are always delivered with the Assistant keypad

### 200/240 V, 3-phase supply voltage

3-phase, 240 V is also available for customers supplying the North American market. Please enquire for details.

### 380/480 V, 3-phase supply voltage

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>kW</th>
<th>Output current A</th>
<th>Max output A</th>
<th>Frame</th>
<th>Fuse A</th>
<th>Heat dissipation W</th>
<th>Cooling requirements</th>
<th>Type (code shown is IP20)</th>
<th>IP20 list price without control panel*</th>
<th>IP66 list price with control panel**</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0.37</td>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>2.1</td>
<td>R0</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>Nat Vent</td>
<td>ACS355-03E-01A2-4</td>
<td>£199</td>
<td>£420</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.55</td>
<td>1.9</td>
<td>3.3</td>
<td>R0</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>Nat Vent</td>
<td>ACS355-03E-01A9-4</td>
<td>£209</td>
<td>£423</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.75</td>
<td>2.4</td>
<td>4.2</td>
<td>R1</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>ACS355-03E-02A4-4</td>
<td>£229</td>
<td>£438</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1</td>
<td>3.3</td>
<td>5.8</td>
<td>R1</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>ACS355-03E-03A4-4</td>
<td>£260</td>
<td>£487</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>4.1</td>
<td>7.2</td>
<td>R1</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>69</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>ACS355-03E-04A1-4</td>
<td>£315</td>
<td>£553</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2</td>
<td>5.8</td>
<td>9.8</td>
<td>R1</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>ACS355-03E-05A6-4</td>
<td>£366</td>
<td>£630</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>7.3</td>
<td>12.8</td>
<td>R1</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>107</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>ACS355-03E-07A3-4</td>
<td>£477</td>
<td>£816</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>8.8</td>
<td>15.4</td>
<td>R1</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>127</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>ACS355-03E-08A8-4</td>
<td>£543</td>
<td>£927</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.5</td>
<td>12.5</td>
<td>21.9</td>
<td>R3</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>161</td>
<td>52</td>
<td>ACS355-03E-12A5-4</td>
<td>£629</td>
<td>£1,096</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.5</td>
<td>15.6</td>
<td>27.3</td>
<td>R3</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>204</td>
<td>52</td>
<td>ACS355-03E-15A6-4</td>
<td>£816</td>
<td>£1,299</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>23.1</td>
<td>40.4</td>
<td>R3</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>301</td>
<td>71</td>
<td>ACS355-03E-23A1-4</td>
<td>£997</td>
<td>n/a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>31.0</td>
<td>54.3</td>
<td>R4</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>408</td>
<td>96</td>
<td>ACS355-03E-31A0-4</td>
<td>£1,277</td>
<td>n/a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.5</td>
<td>38.0</td>
<td>66.5</td>
<td>R4</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>498</td>
<td>96</td>
<td>ACS355-03E-38A0-4</td>
<td>£1,516</td>
<td>n/a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>44.0</td>
<td>77.0</td>
<td>R4</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>588</td>
<td>96</td>
<td>ACS355-03E-44A0-4</td>
<td>£1,853</td>
<td>n/a</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Ensure enough space around the unit - refer to the User's Manual for details
* Note: IP20 drives require a keypad for parameter alteration, it can then be removed if required
** Note: IP66 drives are always delivered with the Assistant keypad

### Control panel

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Control panel</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Price £</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assistant control panel</td>
<td>ACS-CP-A</td>
<td>£94†</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Basic keypad</td>
<td>ACS-CP-C</td>
<td>£27†</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

† Price of control panel only when purchased with drive

Panel mounting kit and user interface descriptions, see page 38
Low voltage AC drives
ABB machinery drive

ACS355 – Dimensions, I/O and options

Dimensions and weights

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IP20 UL Open</th>
<th>NEMA 1/UL Type 1</th>
<th>IP66/67/UL Type 4x</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Frame H1 H2 W D1 D2 Weight</td>
<td>H4 H5 W D1 D2 Weight</td>
<td>H W D1 Weight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>size (mm)</td>
<td>mm</td>
<td>mm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R0</td>
<td>169</td>
<td>202</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R1</td>
<td>169</td>
<td>202</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R2</td>
<td>169</td>
<td>202</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R3</td>
<td>169</td>
<td>202</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R4</td>
<td>181</td>
<td>202</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

H = Height
H1 = Height without fastenings and clamping plate
H2 = Height with fastenings but without clamping plate
H3 = Height with fastenings and clamping plate
H4 = Height with fastenings and NEMA 1 connection box
H5 = Height with fastenings, NEMA 1 connection box and hood
W = Width
D1 = Standard depth
D2 = Depth with MREL or MTAC option

STO connections
The ACS355 has a dual channel STO (safe torque-off) input as standard, certified to BS EN 62061 and BS EN 13849-1

Options available
- Input and output chokes
- Brake chopper resistors (all drives in the ACS355 range have integral chopper)
- First environment EMC filters - footprint style
- Low leakage EMC filters < 30 mA leakage
- FlashDrop, programming in the box without power
- Fieldbus modules
- NEMA kit allows installations to be neater and provides mechanical support for glanded cables
- An extensive range of user interfaces is available - please see following pages
- IP66 pressure relief valves

Typical control connections

X1
1 SCR
2 Alt
3 GND
4 +10 V
5 Alt
6 GND
7 AO
8 GND

DIP switch analogue inputs

0 - 20 mA Ground cable screen at sourcing end

DI configuration
NPN connected (sink)

PNP also possible

DIP switch digital input

For connections in requested DOOUT refer to service manual

17 ROCOM
16 PONC
19 FOCON
20 DOSRC
21 DOCUT
22 DOGND
Assistant control panel (+J400)
Features a multilingual alphanumeric display for easy drive programming. The control panel has various assistants and a built-in help function to guide the user. It includes a real-time clock, which is used during fault logging and in controlling the drive, such as start/stop. The control panel can be used for copying parameters for backup or for downloading to another drive. A large graphical display and soft keys make it extremely easy to navigate.

Basic control panel (+J404)
Features a single line numeric display. The panel can be used to control the drive, set the parameter values or copy them from one drive to another, or view changes.

Panel cover
The panel cover protects the drive when no control panel is used. The ABB machinery drive is delivered with a panel cover as standard. In addition, there are two alternative control panels available as options, see above.

NEMA 1 kit
The NEMA 1 kit is a convenient cover which is added to the drive and enables easy wall-mounting. It includes a connection box for cable gland or conduit tube installation and a hood for protection against dirt and dust.

Panel mounting kits, IP54 and IP66
The panel mounting kits enable mounting of control panels onto cabinet doors. These kits include a 3 m extension cable, a gasket, mounting screws and a mounting template - two versions are now available, IP54 and IP66. The IP66 has an additional keypad membrane cover. Note: IP66 cover is not suitable for outdoor use.

Relay extension module (+L511)
Add an additional three relays to the ACS355 to allow greater use of the drives programme. Fits behind the keypad.

Potentiometer (+J402)
Potentiometer with two switches: start/stop and forward/reverse direction. No external power source is needed for the potentiometer. Fits to the drive I/O.

FlashDrop
Programme the drive whilst still in the box, with no power. Perfect for OEMs and machine builders. FlashDrop is a powerful palm-sized tool for fast and easy parameter selecting and setting. It gives the possibility to hide selected parameters to protect the machine. The tool stores 20 parameter sets, which can be moved between a PC and a drive. Safe programming during machine building production for unskilled staff.

Fieldbus interfaces
Extensive range of plug-in fieldbus interfaces, allowing connection to Profibus, DeviceNet, CanOpen, Modbus RTU and Ethernet and many others.

24V “live keypad” options
There are two ways of powering the fieldbus modules, so that they operate when the main power is removed.

FEPA - maintains power to the fieldbus module only.

MPOW (+G406) - powers the fieldbus module, the control card, the drive I/O and the drive keypad, generating the functionality commonly known as ‘live keypad’ operation.

DriveWindow Light PC tool
The tool is a parameterisation and commissioning tool used to set-up and commission the drive. Monitoring and diagnostic facilities are included, as well as a local control panel. Wizards are included to guide the user through the most commonly performed tasks.
Low voltage AC drives
ABB general purpose drive for fans and pumps

0.37 kW to 22 kW, ACS310
Motor control method – scalar

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Voltage</th>
<th>Supply</th>
<th>Power Range</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>200/240 V, 1-phase supply</td>
<td>0.37 kW - 2.2 kW</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200/240 V, 3-phase supply</td>
<td>0.37 kW - 11 kW</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>380/480 V, 3-phase supply</td>
<td>0.37 kW - 22 kW</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

What is an ABB general purpose drive for fans and pumps?
A dedicated fan and pump controller, designed for squared-torque applications such as booster, submersible and irrigation pumps and centrifugal fans.

The drive benefits pump and fan applications with features including built-in PID controllers and PFC (pump and fan control). The drives also have pre-programmed protection functions such as pipe cleaning (anti-jam) and duty standby functionality, including soft pipe filling to reduce leaks.

These features, combined with pre-programmed application macros, an intuitive user interface, and several assistant screens, speed up the installation, parameter setting and commissioning of the drive.

Highlights

- Pump, soft pump and fan control (PFC and SPFC), for multi-pump and soft fill control
- Pipe cleaning (anti-jam) and pipe fill functions
- Multiple PID set points, allowing for automatic duty/assist/standby schemes to be implemented
- Energy efficiency counters, real-time clock
- Energy optimiser – optimises the motor control for the application to run with minimum energy requirements
- Load analyser for optimised dimensioning of the drive, motor and process
- Embedded Modbus RS-485 fieldbus interface
- FlashDrop tool for fast parameter setting, without mains power

Where can it be used?
The ABB general purpose drive’s software features are ideal for solving the challenges and issues surrounding pumping in general, and those of water and wastewater in particular.

The drive is designed to compliment the features offered by the industry specific products for water and wastewater (see page 51).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Advantage</th>
<th>Benefit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pump and fan control (PFC) feature to control pumps and fans in parallel</td>
<td>One drive controls several pumps or fans and eliminates the need for an external programmable logic controller</td>
<td>Saves cost of additional drives and external PLC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soft pump and fan control feature (SPFC)</td>
<td>Reduces unwanted pressure peaks in pumps and pipelines when an auxiliary motor is started or main pump started</td>
<td>Reduces maintenance costs and leaks typically seen in DOL starting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pump protection functions</td>
<td>Pre-programmed features like: Pipe cleaning (anti-jamming), inlet/outlet pressure supervision and detection of under or overload for preventive maintenance</td>
<td>Reduces maintenance costs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Energy monitoring and optimising features</td>
<td>Drive monitors the saved energy compared to equivalent DOL operation</td>
<td>Energy savings presented in local currency and CO2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Full output current at 50°C ambient</td>
<td>Drive can be operated in ambient temperatures up to 50°C without de-rating the output current</td>
<td>Optimised drive dimensioning for wide temperature range</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unified height and depth</td>
<td>Optimum installation layout, as all drive frames are the same height – only the width changes</td>
<td>Space savings. Easier to lay the cabinet back panel out</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Best-in-class user interfaces</td>
<td>Assistant and Basic keypads with intuitive operation. Short and long menus, Assistants and wizards for ease of use</td>
<td>Users are supported as they program the drive, can tailor the open menu views to suite their customer needs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FlashDrop*</td>
<td>Faster and easier drive set up and commissioning for volume manufacturing</td>
<td>Fast, safe and troublefree method to set up and commission without powering up the drive - patented</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RoHS compliance</td>
<td>Compliance achieved during 2007</td>
<td>Environmentally friendly drives</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* For details of FlashDrop, see user interfaces (page 42)
Low voltage AC drives
ABB general purpose drive for fans and pumps

ACS310 – Ratings, types, voltages and prices

200/240 V, 1-phase supply voltage

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nominal output current kW</th>
<th>Nominal output current A</th>
<th>Max output A</th>
<th>Frame</th>
<th>Fuse A Type gG</th>
<th>Heat dissipation W</th>
<th>Cooling requirements m³/h</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>IP20 list price without control panel*</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0.37</td>
<td>2.4</td>
<td>4.0</td>
<td>R0</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>48</td>
<td>+Nat Vent</td>
<td>ACS310-01E-02A4-2</td>
<td>£116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.75</td>
<td>4.7</td>
<td>7.9</td>
<td>R1</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>ACS310-01E-04A7-2</td>
<td>£132</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1</td>
<td>6.7</td>
<td>11.4</td>
<td>R1</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>97</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>ACS310-01E-06A7-2</td>
<td>£154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>7.5</td>
<td>12.6</td>
<td>R2</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>101</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>ACS310-01E-07A5-2</td>
<td>£171</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2</td>
<td>9.8</td>
<td>16.5</td>
<td>R2</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>124</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>ACS310-01E-09A8-2</td>
<td>£207</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

200/240 V, 3-phase supply voltage

3-phase, 240 V is available for customers supplying the North American market. Please enquire for details.

380/480 V, 3-phase supply voltage

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nominal output current kW</th>
<th>Nominal output current A</th>
<th>Max output A</th>
<th>Frame</th>
<th>Fuse A Type gG</th>
<th>Heat dissipation W</th>
<th>Cooling requirements m³/h</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>IP20 list price without control panel*</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0.37</td>
<td>1.3</td>
<td>2.1</td>
<td>R0</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>+Nat Vent</td>
<td>ACS310-03E-01A3-4</td>
<td>£180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.55</td>
<td>2.1</td>
<td>3.3</td>
<td>R0</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>+Nat Vent</td>
<td>ACS310-03E-02A1-4</td>
<td>£189</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.75</td>
<td>2.6</td>
<td>4.2</td>
<td>R1</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>ACS310-03E-02A6-4</td>
<td>£207</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1</td>
<td>3.6</td>
<td>5.8</td>
<td>R1</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>ACS310-03E-03A6-4</td>
<td>£230</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>4.5</td>
<td>7.2</td>
<td>R1</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>69</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>ACS310-03E-04A5-4</td>
<td>£300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2</td>
<td>6.2</td>
<td>9.8</td>
<td>R1</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>ACS310-03E-06A2-4</td>
<td>£331</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>12.8</td>
<td>R1</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>107</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>ACS310-03E-08A0-4</td>
<td>£425</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>9.7</td>
<td>15.4</td>
<td>R1</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>127</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>ACS310-03E-08A7-4</td>
<td>£482</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.5</td>
<td>13.8</td>
<td>21.9</td>
<td>R3</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>161</td>
<td>52</td>
<td>ACS310-03E-13A8-4</td>
<td>£560</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.5</td>
<td>17.2</td>
<td>27.3</td>
<td>R3</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>204</td>
<td>52</td>
<td>ACS310-03E-17A2-4</td>
<td>£738</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>25.4</td>
<td>40.4</td>
<td>R3</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>301</td>
<td>71</td>
<td>ACS310-03E-25A4-4</td>
<td>£900</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>34.1</td>
<td>54.3</td>
<td>R4</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>408</td>
<td>96</td>
<td>ACS310-03E-34A1-4</td>
<td>£1,157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.5</td>
<td>41.8</td>
<td>66.5</td>
<td>R4</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>486</td>
<td>96</td>
<td>ACS310-03E-41A8-4</td>
<td>£1,349</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>48.4</td>
<td>77.0</td>
<td>R4</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>588</td>
<td>96</td>
<td>ACS310-03E-48A4-4</td>
<td>£1,648</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Control panel

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Control panel</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Price £</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assistant control panel</td>
<td>ACS-CP-A</td>
<td>£94**</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Basic keypad</td>
<td>ACS-CP-C</td>
<td>£27**</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

** Price of control panel only when purchased with drive
Panel mounting kit and user interface descriptions, see page 42.

+ Ensure enough space around the unit - refer to the User’s Manual for details
* Drives require a control panel for parameter alteration, it can then be removed if required
For 50°C ratings contact ABB
Low voltage AC drives
ABB general purpose drive for fans and pumps

ACS310 – Dimensions, I/O and options

Dimensions and weights

Cabinet-mounted drives (IP20 UL open)

Wall-mounted drives (NEMA 1)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Frame size</th>
<th>H1 mm</th>
<th>H2 mm</th>
<th>H3 mm</th>
<th>W mm</th>
<th>D mm</th>
<th>Weight Kg</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>R0</td>
<td>169</td>
<td>202</td>
<td>239</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>161</td>
<td>1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R1</td>
<td>169</td>
<td>202</td>
<td>239</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>161</td>
<td>1.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R2</td>
<td>169</td>
<td>202</td>
<td>239</td>
<td>105</td>
<td>165</td>
<td>1.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R3</td>
<td>169</td>
<td>202</td>
<td>236</td>
<td>169</td>
<td>169</td>
<td>2.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R4</td>
<td>181</td>
<td>202</td>
<td>244</td>
<td>260</td>
<td>169</td>
<td>4.4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

H1 = Height without fastenings and clamping plate
H2 = Height with fastenings but without clamping plate
H3 = Height with fastenings and clamping plate
H4 = Height with fastenings and NEMA 1 connection box
H5 = Height with fastenings, NEMA 1 connection box and hood
W = Width
D = Depth

Options available
- Input and output chokes
- ACS310 has no braking options
- First environment EMC filters - footprint style
- Low leakage EMC filters < 30 mA leakage
- FlashDrop
- NEMA kit allows installations to be neater and provides mechanical support for glanded cables
- An extensive range of user interfaces is available - please see following pages

Typical control connections
- All I/O are programmable for other configurations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>X1</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>SCR</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>A1</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>GND</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>X1</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>+16 V</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>A12</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>GND</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X1</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>AO</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>GND</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

DIP switch
analogue inputs

DI configuration
NPN connected (sink)
PNP also possible

No. to 4
Common to all signals
For connected input and DO.DT electric output
Low voltage AC drives
ABB general purpose drive for fans and pumps
ACS310 – User interfaces

**Assistant control panel (+J400)**
Features a multilingual alphanumeric display for easy drive programming. The control panel has various assistants and a built-in help function to guide the user. It includes a real-time clock, which is used during fault logging and in controlling the drive, such as start/stop. The control panel can be used for copying parameters for backup or for downloading to another drive. A large graphical display and softkeys make it extremely easy to navigate.

**Basic control panel (+J404)**
Features a single line numeric display. The panel can be used to control the drive, set the parameter values or copy them from one drive to another.

**Panel cover**
The panel cover protects the drive’s connection when no control panel is used. The ABB general purpose drive is delivered with a panel cover as standard, thereby providing a cost effective package. In addition, there are two alternative control panels available as options, see above.

**NEMA 1 kit**
The NEMA 1 kit is a convenient cover which is added to the drive and enables easy wall-mounting. It includes a connection box for cable gland or conduit tube installation and a hood for protection against dirt and dust.

**Panel mounting kit, IP54 and IP66**
The panel mounting kit enables mounting of control panels on cabinet doors. These kits include a 3 m extension cable, a gasket, mounting screws and a mounting template - two versions are now available, IP54 and IP66. The IP66 has an additional keypad membrane cover.

Note: IP66 cover is not suitable for outdoor use.

**Relay extension module (+L511)**
Add an additional three relays to the ACS310 to allow greater use of the PFC program. Fits behind the keypad.

**FlashDrop**
Programme the drive whilst still in the box, with no power. Perfect for OEMs and machine builders. FlashDrop is a powerful palm-sized tool for fast and easy parameter selecting and setting. It gives the possibility to hide selected parameters to protect the machine. The tool stores 20 parameter sets, which can be moved between a PC and a drive. Safe programming during machine building production for unskilled staff.

**Fieldbus communications**
ACS310 has no industrial fieldbus interfaces, but it does have an RS485 Modbus communications link built-in. This link can be used to communicate to industrial HMIs or remote monitoring devices or to a fieldbus via a suitable gateway.

**DriveWindow Light PC tool**
This tool is a parameterisation and commissioning tool used to set-up and commission the drive. Monitoring and diagnostic facilities are included, as well as a local control panel. Wizards are included to guide the user through the most commonly performed tasks.
Low voltage AC drives
ABB general purpose drive

0.55 kW to 500 kW, ACS580
Motor control method – scalar or vector control (open or closed loop)
380 - 480 V, 3-phase supply, 0.55 kW to 500 kW

What is an ABB general purpose drive?
The ACS580 is stocked and delivered by ABB’s authorised value provider network, and handles a very wide range of applications. It is a highly useable drive incorporating ABB’s most intuitive keypad functionality. The “primary settings” guide the user much like a smart phone. The drive retains the swinging choke harmonic suppression technology, which has been updated to permanent magnet technology. The drive includes built-in machinery safety functionality with safe torque-off (STO) to SIL 3 PL e as standard, and has more frames to optimise the commercial and power offering.

Highlights
– Improved internal options including external 24 V support
– Integral EMC filter for 1st and 2nd environment as standard
– Assistant control panel with improved primary settings menu and backups-smartphone useability
– Wide power range in wall-mounted IP21 and IP55 variants
– Extended power range with ACS580-04 and ACS580-07 to 500 kW
– Patented permanent magnet swinging choke for superior harmonic reduction, even at reduced motor loads
– Safe torque-off (STO) as standard, SIL 3 PL e
– Flexible fieldbus system with built-in Modbus and numerous internally mountable fieldbus adapters
– SynRM, permanent magnet (PM) and induction motor (IM) control with improved motor platform

Where can it be used?
The ABB general purpose drive is ideal in those situations where there is a need for simplicity to install, commission and use and where reasonable amounts of flexibility and functionality are required. The addition of STO, 24 V support and improved fieldbus support and wider powers, extends the applications.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Advantage</th>
<th>Benefit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Intuitive modern keypad</td>
<td>High contrast, high definition display giving intuitive access to the drive parameters. Built-in “Help” button, giving programming hints. Real-time clock, allows timed tracing of faults and setting of parameters to activate functions at various times of day. Changed parameters menu also included, so you can see your edits</td>
<td>Easy commissioning, programming, maintenance and fault finding, making the drive easy to own and use across all activities. Allows drive cloning for easy set up of multiple drives</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primary settings menu</td>
<td>Assisted set-up for all of the drives common settings. Intuitive and context sensitive makes navigation easier for the user, like a smartphone</td>
<td>Even easier to configure the drive to the application. Next level of VSD usability</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Text editing capabilities</td>
<td>Rename drive variables or warning messages</td>
<td>Tailor the drive to “speak” in the language of the application</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adaptive programming</td>
<td>Drive contains a freely programmable environment allowing changes and adaptaions to the drive parameters. Easy to use and flexible</td>
<td>The drive can easily be flexed to meet the needs of the application, without external devices, existing controls, timers, relays etc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Improved backups</td>
<td>Keypad can store backups with a time stamp, or automatic backups can be taken. Backups can be viewed before download, or partial downloads can be performed</td>
<td>Easy to manage installed base and speeds up commissioning. Auto backup means you never forget</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Integrated safety, STO as standard SIL3 PL e</td>
<td>TÜV approved STO is on board the drive. Makes it easy to generate safety systems without the need for external contactors</td>
<td>Minimise installation time and space. Shorter design times using TÜV approved interface</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Energy monitoring and optimising features</td>
<td>Drive controls the motor voltage dependant on the load. Drive monitors the saved energy compared to equivalent DOL operation</td>
<td>Consumed energy optimised across the speed and load range. Energy savings presented in local currency and tonnes of CO₂</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24 V operation</td>
<td>Power the drive control card, I/O and fieldbus from an external 24 V. Frames R0 to R5 require a CMOD; standard in R6 and above</td>
<td>Safer diagnostics and maintenance activities can be undertaken without the need for mains voltages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cold configuration - Programming without mains power whilst in the box</td>
<td>Quicker parameter programming for OEM users. Drive can be programmed with a PC interface that injects the parameters directly into the drive whilst it is still in the box</td>
<td>Quicker, cheaper manufacturing for OEMs. Easier spares handling in store without the need to power on the drive</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For more details, please refer to Technical Catalogue 3AU000145061
### Wall-mounted single drive
**Series ACS850-01**
- 0.55 kW to 250 kW, (380 - 480 V)
- Largest power for wall-mount drive on market
- Coated boards as standard
- Variable-speed cooling fans
- TÜV approved safe torque-off (STO) to SIL 3 PL e standard
- IP21 as standard, IP55 as option
- IP55 variant similar footprint to IP21 variant
- Brake chopper standard to R3 frame, option thereafter
- Optional UK cable box for SWA cables
- EMC filter for C3 category according to EN 61800-3 (2004) standard
- Internal fieldbus options
- Optional relay expansion, PTC and 115 V/240 V Di's

### Cabinet built single drives
**Series ACS850-07**
- 250kW to 500kW
- Contains the 580-04 module described below, so adopts all of its features
- Optimised list of options covering IP rating, cable entry and door furniture, to ensure a fast and efficient build and delivery time schedule
- New cabinet designs containing the ACS850-01 module expected in 2017

### Cabinet mounted single drive
**Series ACS850-04**
- 250 kW to 500 kW
- Most compact floor standing module
- Coated boards as standard
- Variable-speed redundant cooling fans
- TÜV approved safe torque-off (STO) to SIL 3 PL e
- IP00 module, mounted on wheels
- Brake chopper optional
- EMC, fieldbus and relay expansion as per ACS850-01

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No-overload (nominal) use</th>
<th>Light-duty use</th>
<th>Heavy-duty use</th>
<th>Max output A</th>
<th>Frame</th>
<th>Fuse A</th>
<th>Heat dissipation</th>
<th>Cooling requirements</th>
<th>Type (+J400 + H358 to order keypad &amp; SWA gland plate)</th>
<th>Price IP21</th>
<th>Price IP55 (+B050)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pn A</td>
<td>In A</td>
<td>Pd A</td>
<td>Id A</td>
<td>Phd A</td>
<td>Ihd A</td>
<td>kg</td>
<td>W</td>
<td>m/h</td>
<td>ACS850-01-02A6-4</td>
<td>£466</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.75</td>
<td>2.6</td>
<td>0.75</td>
<td>2.5</td>
<td>0.55</td>
<td>1.8</td>
<td>R0</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>ACS850-01-03A3-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1</td>
<td>3.1</td>
<td>1.1</td>
<td>3.1</td>
<td>0.75</td>
<td>2.6</td>
<td>R0</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>55</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>ACS850-01-04A0-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>4.1</td>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>3.8</td>
<td>1.1</td>
<td>3.3</td>
<td>R0</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>66</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>ACS850-01-05A6-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2</td>
<td>5.6</td>
<td>2.2</td>
<td>5.3</td>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>R0</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>84</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>ACS850-01-07A2-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.5</td>
<td>12.6</td>
<td>5.5</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>9.4</td>
<td>R0</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>174</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>ACS850-01-09A4-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.5</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>7.5</td>
<td>16.2</td>
<td>5.5</td>
<td>12.6</td>
<td>R0</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>228</td>
<td>128</td>
<td>ACS850-01-11A7-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>23.8</td>
<td>7.5</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>R0</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>322</td>
<td>128</td>
<td>ACS850-01-12A8-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>30.4</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>24.6</td>
<td>R0</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>430</td>
<td>116</td>
<td>ACS850-01-13A9-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.5</td>
<td>38</td>
<td>18.5</td>
<td>36.1</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>31.6</td>
<td>R0</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>525</td>
<td>116</td>
<td>ACS850-01-16A4-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>42.8</td>
<td>18.5</td>
<td>37.7</td>
<td>R0</td>
<td>63</td>
<td>619</td>
<td>116</td>
<td>ACS850-01-18A5-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>62</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>58</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>R0</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>835</td>
<td>134</td>
<td>ACS850-01-20A6-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37</td>
<td>73</td>
<td>37</td>
<td>68</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>61</td>
<td>R0</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>1024</td>
<td>134</td>
<td>ACS850-01-07A3-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45</td>
<td>88</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>82.7</td>
<td>37</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>R0</td>
<td>150</td>
<td>1240</td>
<td>159</td>
<td>ACS850-01-08A8-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55</td>
<td>108</td>
<td>55</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>87</td>
<td>R0</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>1510</td>
<td>159</td>
<td>ACS850-01-10A6-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>75</td>
<td>145</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>138</td>
<td>55</td>
<td>105</td>
<td>R0</td>
<td>160</td>
<td>1747</td>
<td>175</td>
<td>ACS850-01-12A9-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90</td>
<td>189</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>161</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>145</td>
<td>R0</td>
<td>250</td>
<td>1976</td>
<td>175</td>
<td>ACS850-01-16A9-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>110</td>
<td>206</td>
<td>110</td>
<td>196</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>169</td>
<td>R0</td>
<td>315</td>
<td>2346</td>
<td>175</td>
<td>ACS850-01-20A6-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>132</td>
<td>246</td>
<td>132</td>
<td>234</td>
<td>110</td>
<td>206</td>
<td>R0</td>
<td>355</td>
<td>3385</td>
<td>175</td>
<td>ACS850-01-20A6-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>160</td>
<td>293</td>
<td>160</td>
<td>278</td>
<td>132</td>
<td>264</td>
<td>R0</td>
<td>425</td>
<td>3936</td>
<td>159</td>
<td>ACS850-01-25A4-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200</td>
<td>363</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>345</td>
<td>160</td>
<td>293</td>
<td>R0</td>
<td>500</td>
<td>4836</td>
<td>159</td>
<td>ACS850-01-26A3-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>250</td>
<td>430</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>400</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>363</td>
<td>R0</td>
<td>630</td>
<td>6036</td>
<td>159</td>
<td>ACS850-01-30A4-4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Options for ACS580-01

ACS580-01 is a wall mounted drive, so all options fit inside:
- IP55 variant
- Internal fieldbus options
- Optional additional industrial fieldbus
- Optional relay expansion
- Optional isolated PTC option
- Optional 115/230 V digital inputs
- UK gland box to accommodate SWA cable
- Brake chopper (up to frame R3 fitted as standard)

Apart from IP55, the above also applies to ACS580-04 and ACS580-07.

All ABB general purpose drives use the same common options and user interfaces. These are detailed on page 46. They are also part of the “all compatible family” so keypad interfaces, common PC tools, parameter structures and programming methods are all common, even across other drive ranges.

Cold configuration adapter – CCA-01

ACS580 drives can be programmed without the need for mains power or without taking the drive out of the box using the CCA-01. This specifically allows rapid programming for OEM without the need for safe areas in production.

Typical I/O connections for ACS580

These connections are shown as examples only. Please refer to the User’s Manual – macro section, for more detailed information and for different I/O configurations.
Low voltage AC drives
ABB general purpose drive
ACS580 – Common user interfaces

Control panel
State-of-the-art, high resolution keypad brings a new level of usability to the drives marketplace. The ACS580 uses the keypad platform from the new “all compatible” range of drives from ABB. The main difference, is that the ACS580 includes a “primary settings” menu, a guided set-up procedure similar to that of a smart phone, making it very easy to commission.

Bluetooth keypad and DriveTune app
Using a special Bluetooth enabled keypad, ABB offers connection to a mobile phone using an app called DriveTune. There are versions of the app for IOS and Android operating systems.

Fieldbus (various Plus codes)
The ACS580 supports an extensive list of fieldbus modules for connectivity to industrial networks. These modules are common with other drives within the ABB drives range. Modbus embedded as standard.

I/O extension and external 24 V (+L501)
The CMOD-01 offer additional two relay outputs (changeover) and one digital output, as well as giving a place to connect external 24 V (AC or DC).

Panel/keypad bus adapter - CDPI-01(+K450)
The ACS580 can be connected onto a panel bus, where 32 drives can be daisy chained using a simple CAT5 cable. The chain would have one keypad mounted on the cabinet door, communicating to the other drives via the CDPI module, which fits where the keypad normally connects on the drive.

Interface
Keypad connection
Cold configuration port
Analogue I/O
24 V supply
Digital inputs
Safe torque-off
Fieldbus slot
Embedded fieldbus
Relay outputs
CMOD slot
Power and motor connections

Isolated PTC input and external 24 V (+L523 or L537)
The CMOD-02 offers an isolated PTC interface, as well as giving a place to connect external 24 V (AC or DC). The CPTC-02 offers isolated PTC with ATEX certification.

High voltage I/O extension (+L512)
The CHDI-01 offers an additional six high voltage (115/230 V) digital inputs and two relay outputs (changeover); allows high voltage connection without interposing relays.

Drive Composer PC tool
Drive Composer is the new PC tool for the ACS580 family. The PC tool comes in two variants – the “Entry” level is a free of charge point-to-point tool and allows simple parameter editing and storage, as well as monitoring and commissioning support, while the “Pro” level has all of this as well as animated control diagrams and extended commissioning, monitoring and diagnostic support, as well as the ability to program the safety functions. The Pro tool allows the user to connect to multiple drives either over “panel bus” where the keypad port is used, or ever Ethernet.

Door mounting kit, DPMP-EXT (IP65)
The keypad can be mounted onto a panel door using a two part kit. The kit includes a CDPI which is mounted onto the drive, then the DPMP-02 (pictured) is mounted onto the door and a CAT5 cable is used to connect between the two. When keypad is installed the assembly is IP65.
Low voltage AC drives
ABB drive for HVAC
0.55 kW to 250 kW, ACH580
Motor control method - scalar, vector speed (open and closed loop)
380/480 V, 3-phase supply, 0.55 kW - 250 kW

What is an ABB HVAC drive?
ACH580 is the new dedicated low voltage AC drive for heating, ventilation & air-conditioning (HVAC) applications. The drives are designed to meet - straight out of the box - the HVAC market requirements including harmonics and EMC standards and for easy integration with building management systems. HVAC features such as override functionality are enhanced to further make this drive an industry specialist. The new platform is able to accurately and properly control induction, permanent magnet and SynRM motors. With improved built-in PID control, native BACnet communication, timers, real-time clock and a calendar, ABB HVAC drives provide flexible solutions for a wide range of HVAC needs.

Where can it be used?
ABB HVAC drives make maintaining a buildings comfort zone easy, quick and energy efficient. The drives control the speed of pump, fan and refrigeration compressor motors used in air handling units, cooling towers, chillers and other HVAC applications. They help reduce the HVAC system’s energy consumption by up to 70 percent, and quite often have payback times of less than a year. These highly reliable drives with built-in BACnet easily integrate into building management systems.

Highlights
- Built-in BACnet
- Accurate and efficient control of induction, permanent magnet and SynRM motors
- New energy monitoring features record energy, CO₂ and money saved (compared to equivalent DOL)
- Wide power range in wall-mounted IP21 and IP55 variants
- Intelligent HVAC control panel
- Assistant control panel with improved primary settings menu and backups, smartphone usability
- STO SIL3, PL e

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Advantage</th>
<th>Benefit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Intuitive modern keypad</td>
<td>High contrast, high definition display giving intuitive access to the drive parameters, Built-in “Help” button, giving programming hints. Real-time clock, allows timed tracing of faults and setting of parameters to activate functions at various times of day</td>
<td>Easy commissioning, programming, maintenance and fault finding, making the drive easy to own and use across all activities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primary settings menu</td>
<td>Assisted set-up for all of the drives common settings, Intuitive and context sensitive makes navigation easier for the user, like a smartphone</td>
<td>Even easier to configure the drive to the application. Next level of VSD usability</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Swinging choke, improved</td>
<td>Patented by ABB, Reduces the drives’ harmonic signature, especially on partial loads. Improved with permanent magnet technology</td>
<td>Reduces part load harmonics by up to 25 percent, in comparison with traditional chokes. Variable air volume (VAV) systems run on partial loads at least 95 percent of the time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EMC (manufacturer's statement available)</td>
<td>Integrated category C2 (1st environment) filters to BS EN 61800-3</td>
<td>EMC filters suitable for 400 V network connection built-into the drive as standard will save panel space, avoid additional wiring, earthing and assembly costs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Advanced serial communications</td>
<td>HVAC protocols built-in as standard. BACnet, Modbus RTU embedded, Fieldbus adapters allow connection of: BACnet IP, Profibus-DP, CANopen, DeviceNet, Modbus/TCP, ControlNet, Ethernet</td>
<td>Can connect to any building management system (BMS), native BACnet as standard, Ethernet based BACnet as an option</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Real-time clock</td>
<td>Easily set up at time of installation and protected by its own battery back-up. The time allows the drive to timestamp events and operate functions at set times, thus removing the need for external devices</td>
<td>Can be used together with timer functions of the drive to trigger various events (via relays or outputs) within the application software such as time / speed profile, allowing the drive to be a stand alone unit without the need for BMS input</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System diagnostics</td>
<td>Diagnostic assistant, on-board fault history with real-time of when fault occurred, covering voltage, current, DC link level etc</td>
<td>Instant fault tracking and date stamping, gives status of drive to enable rapid drive diagnostics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Energy efficiency counters</td>
<td>Works out energy savings of the application in kWh and MWh; the cost of the energy saved in a local currency; and the carbon dioxide (CO₂) emissions equivalent of the energy saved</td>
<td>Can assist with electricity billing in accordance with Part L2 Building Regulations. Allows verification of energy savings before making investments in capital equipment</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The drive is programmed by the most intuitive and user-friendly keypad ABB has produced and incorporates a “primary settings” menu that guides the user through the most common settings. The new PC tool is designed to incorporate all of the latest functionality that new operating systems bring, including a free of charge entry level version and a chargeable Pro version.

The drive retains the same swinging choke harmonic suppression technology, which has been updated to permanent magnet technology, making the package lighter. The IP rating has improved to IP55. Improvements are made to terminal sizes and fieldbus offerings, as well as being powered by an external 24 V.

Motor control has been vastly updated. The drive can control, induction, permanent magnet (PM) and SynRM motors. It can accurately catch spinning leads and ride through power dips.

The drive includes built-in machinery safety functionality with safe torque-off (STO) to SIL 3 PL e as standard. There are more frame sizes, extending the power range to 250 kW in a wall-mounted format and the IP55 variant is significantly smaller, occupying almost the same space as the IP21 equivalent.

### 380 – 480 V, 3-phase supply voltage (ratings shown are for 415 V)

| No-overload (nominal) use | Light-duty use | Heavy-duty use | Max output A | Frame | Fuse A | Type gG | Heat dissipation | Cooling requirements | Price IP21 | Price IP55 (+B05)
|--------------------------|----------------|----------------|--------------|-------|--------|---------|-----------------|---------------------|-----------|-------------------|
| P 
| kW | A | P 
| kw | A | P 
| kw | A | P 
| kw | A | kW | A | W | m³/h | Type (+J400 + H550 to order keypad & SWA gland plate) | £ | £
| 0.75 | 2.6 | 0.75 | 2.6 | 0.55 | 1.8 | 3.2 | R0 4 | 45 | 34 | ACH580-01-02A6-4 | £433 | £520
| 1.1 | 3.3 | 1.1 | 3.3 | 0.75 | 2.6 | 4.7 | R0 6 | 55 | 34 | ACH580-01-03A3-4 | £466 | £531
| 1.5 | 4 | 1.5 | 4 | 1.1 | 3.3 | 5.9 | R0 6 | 66 | 34 | ACH580-01-04A0-4 | £531 | £606
| 2.2 | 5.6 | 2.2 | 5.3 | 1.5 | 4 | 7.2 | R0 10 | 84 | 34 | ACH580-01-05A6-4 | £563 | £682
| 3 | 7.2 | 3 | 6.8 | 2.2 | 5.6 | 10.1 | R1 10 | 106 | 50 | ACH580-01-07A2-4 | £617 | £736
| 4 | 9.4 | 4 | 8.9 | 3 | 7.2 | 13 | R1 16 | 133 | 50 | ACH580-01-09A4-4 | £693 | £855
| 5.5 | 12.6 | 5.5 | 12 | 4 | 9.4 | 14.1 | R1 16 | 174 | 50 | ACH580-01-12A6-4 | £812 | £920
| 7.5 | 17 | 7.5 | 16.2 | 5.5 | 12.6 | 22.7 | R2 25 | 228 | 128 | ACH580-01-07A4-4 | £962 | £1,007
| 11 | 25 | 11 | 23.8 | 7.5 | 17 | 30.6 | R2 32 | 322 | 128 | ACH580-01-05A2-4 | £1,180 | £1,331
| 15 | 32 | 15 | 30.4 | 11 | 24.6 | 44.3 | R3 40 | 430 | 116 | ACH580-01-032A-4 | £1,515 | £1,688
| 18.5 | 38 | 18.5 | 36.1 | 15 | 31.6 | 56.9 | R3 50 | 525 | 116 | ACH580-01-038A-4 | £1,721 | £1,894
| 22 | 45 | 22 | 42.8 | 18.5 | 37.7 | 67.9 | R3 63 | 619 | 116 | ACH580-01-045A-4 | £1,969 | £2,250
| 30 | 62 | 30 | 58 | 22 | 44.6 | 76 | R4 80 | 835 | 134 | ACH580-01-062A-4 | £2,348 | £2,694
| 37 | 73 | 37 | 68 | 30 | 61 | 104 | R4 100 | 1024 | 134 | ACH580-01-073A-4 | £2,661 | £3,016
| 45 | 88 | 45 | 82.7 | 37 | 72 | 122 | R5 100 | 1240 | 134 | ACH580-01-088A-4 | £3,364 | £3,699
| 55 | 106 | 55 | 100 | 45 | 87 | 148 | R5 125 | 1510 | 139 | ACH580-01-106A-4 | £4,543 | £5,268
| 75 | 145 | 75 | 138 | 55 | 105 | 178 | R6 160 | 1476 | 435 | ACH580-01-145A-4 | £5,846 | £6,596
| 90 | 189 | 90 | 161 | 75 | 145 | 247 | R7 250 | 1976 | 450 | ACH580-01-169A-4 | £6,836 | £7,755
| 110 | 208 | 110 | 196 | 90 | 169 | 287 | R7 315 | 2346 | 550 | ACH580-01-206A-4 | £7,744 | £8,556
| 132 | 246 | 132 | 234 | 110 | 206 | 350 | R8 355 | 3336 | 550 | ACH580-01-246A-4 | £9,258 | £10,188
| 160 | 293 | 160 | 278 | 132 | 246 | 418 | R8 425 | 3936 | 1150 | ACH580-01-293A-4 | £12,139 | £13,387
| 200 | 363 | 200 | 345 | 160 | 293 | 498 | R9 500 | 4836 | 1150 | ACH580-01-363A-4 | £15,371 | £16,188
| 250 | 430 | 200 | 400 | 200 | 363 | 617 | R9 630 | 6036 | 1150 | ACH580-01-430A-4 | £18,899 | £19,903

For details, please refer to Technical Catalogue 3AUA0000186691

### Wall-mounted single drive

Series ACH580-01
- Wall-mounted or cabinet, frame sizes R1-R9
- Two variants, IP21 and IP55
- Built-in EMC filter (1st & 2nd environment)
- HVAC software, easy to configure
- Built-in BACnet and Modbus interfaces
- Cable connection box with SWA glancing
- Control of IM, PM and SynRM motors
- HVAC assistant control panel, NEW design
- Built-in patented swinging choke, improved
- Sensorless vector control, scalar control
- CCA-01 compatible, programming in the box
- RoHS compliant
- New rules for outdoor mounting available

Low voltage AC drives
ABB drive for HVAC

ACH580 – Variants, ratings voltages and prices
Options for ACH580-01

ACH580-01 is a wall mounted drive, so all of the options fit inside:
- IP55 variant
- Internal fieldbus options
- Optional additional industrial fieldbus
- Optional relay expansion
- Optional isolated PTC option
- Optional 115/230 V digital inputs
- UK gland box to accommodate SWA cable
- Brake chopper (up to frame R3 fitted as standard)

All ABB HVAC drives use the same common options and user interfaces. These are detailed on page 50. They are also part of the "all compatible family" so keypad interfaces, common PC tools, parameter structures and programming methods are all common.

Cold configuration adapter – CCA-01

ACH580 drives can be programmed without the need for mains power or without taking the drive out of the box using the CCA-01. This specifically allows rapid programming for OEM without the need for safe areas in production.

Dimensions and weights, wall-mounted drives

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Frame size</th>
<th>Height mm</th>
<th>Width mm</th>
<th>Depth mm</th>
<th>Weight kg</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IP21</td>
<td>R0</td>
<td>303</td>
<td>125</td>
<td>210</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>R1</td>
<td>303</td>
<td>125</td>
<td>223</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>R2</td>
<td>394</td>
<td>125</td>
<td>227</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>R3</td>
<td>454</td>
<td>203</td>
<td>228</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>R4</td>
<td>600</td>
<td>203</td>
<td>258</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>R5</td>
<td>732</td>
<td>203</td>
<td>283</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>R6</td>
<td>727</td>
<td>252</td>
<td>369</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>R7</td>
<td>880</td>
<td>284</td>
<td>370</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>R8</td>
<td>965</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>393</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>R9</td>
<td>955</td>
<td>380</td>
<td>418</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Frame size</th>
<th>Height mm</th>
<th>Width mm</th>
<th>Depth mm</th>
<th>Weight kg</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IP55</td>
<td>R0</td>
<td>303</td>
<td>125</td>
<td>222</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>R1</td>
<td>303</td>
<td>125</td>
<td>233</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>R2</td>
<td>394</td>
<td>125</td>
<td>239</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>R3</td>
<td>454</td>
<td>203</td>
<td>237</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>R4</td>
<td>600</td>
<td>203</td>
<td>265</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>R5</td>
<td>732</td>
<td>203</td>
<td>320</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>R6</td>
<td>726</td>
<td>252</td>
<td>380</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>R7</td>
<td>880</td>
<td>284</td>
<td>381</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>R8</td>
<td>965</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>452</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>R9</td>
<td>955</td>
<td>360</td>
<td>477</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Typical I/O connections for ACH580

These connections are shown as examples only. Please refer to the User’s Manual – macro section, for more detailed information and for different I/O configurations.
Low voltage AC drives
ABB drive for HVAC

ACH580 – Common user interfaces

Control panel
State-of-the-art high resolution keypad brings a new level of usability to the drives marketplace. The ACH580 uses a HVAC specific keypad with hand/off/auto buttons. The ACH580 includes a “primary settings” menu that is suited to HVAC users, a guided set-up procedure similar to that of a smart phone.

- Bluetooth variant available (option)
- New high resolution screen
- More advanced homescreens
- Softkeys – context sensitive
- Real-time clock
- Help key
- Two more navigation keys makes editing much faster
- Hand/off/auto controls
- USB connection, no special leads required

Bluetooth keypad and DriveTune app
Using a special Bluetooth enabled keypad, ABB can offer connection to the mobile phone using an app called DriveTune. There are versions of the app for IOS and Android operating systems.

I/O extension and external 24 V (+L501)
The CMOD-01 offer additional two relay outputs (changeover) and one digital output, as well as giving a place to connect external 24 V (AC or DC).

Fieldbus (various Plus codes)
The ACH580 supports an extensive list of fieldbus modules including BACnet IP, for connectivity to industrial networks. These modules are common with other drives within the ABB drives range.

Panel/keypad bus adapter - CDPI-01 (+K450)
The ACH580 can be connected onto a panel bus, where 32 drives can be daisy chained using a simple CAT5 cable. The chain would have one keypad mounted on the cabinet door, communicating to the other drives via the CDPI module, which fits where the keypad normally connects on the drive.

Interface
Keypad connection
Cold configuration port
Analogue I/O
24 V supply
Digital inputs
Safe torque-off
Fieldbus slot
Embedded BACnet
Relay outputs
CMOD slot
Power and motor connections

Isolated PTC input and external 24 V (+L523)
The CMOD-02 offers an isolated PTC interface, as well as giving a place to connect external 24 V (AC or DC)

High voltage I/O extension (+L512)
The CHDI-01 offers an additional six high voltage (115/230 V) digital inputs and two relay outputs (changeover); allows high voltage connection without interposing relays.

Drive Composer PC tool
Drive Composer is the new PC tool for the ACH580 family. The PC tool comes in two variants – the “Entry” level is a free of charge point-to-point tool and allows simple parameter editing and storage, as well as monitoring and commissioning support, while the “Pro” level has all of this as well as animated control diagrams and extended commissioning, monitoring and diagnostic support, as well as the ability to program the safety functions. The Pro tool allows the user to connect to multiple drives either over “panel bus” where the keypad port is used, or ever Ethernet.

Door mounting kit, DPMP-EXT (IP65)
The keypad can be mounted onto a panel door using a two part kit. The kit includes a CDPI which is mounted onto the drive, then the DPMP-02 (pictured) is mounted onto the door and a CAT5 cable is used to connect between the two. When keypad is installed the assembly is IP65.
Low voltage AC drives
ABB drive for water and wastewater
0.75 kW to 250 kW, ACQ580
Motor control method – Scalar, vector speed and torque (open and closed loop)
380–480 V, 3-phase supply, 0.75 kW - 250 kW

What is the next generation ABB drive for water and wastewater?
This new industry-specific drive is part of the ABB all compatible platform, and allows smooth control of induction, permanent magnet and SynRM motors. The modules feature tailor-made pump control functions for single and multipump systems that ensure smooth, disturbance-free operation, maximised energy efficiency and reduced downtime.

Highlights
– Intelligent solution for controlling pump performance
– Remote monitoring and diagnostics
– Pump cleaning/de-ragging algorithms
– Full multipump software including auto charge
– Easy and cost-effective cabinet assembly
– Improved internal options, including external 24 V support
– Assistant control panel with intelligent primary settings menu and backups
– SynRM, permanent magnet and induction motor control with improved motor platform

Where can it be used?
The drive can be used for any of the variable-speed applications contained within the water and wastewater industry, to optimise the system and to save energy. Wall or cabinet assembly, the drives are easily mounted side-by-side. Highly intuitive primary settings menus allows the drive to be configured like a smart phone and coupled with intelligent start-up assistant ensures that drive commissioning is straightforward. The functions needed for most pumping systems can be easily implemented using the primary settings applications. Starting up a pumping system and optimising its performance is now even easier.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Advantage</th>
<th>Benefit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pump cleaning or de-ragging</td>
<td>Used in wastewater pumping stations to prevent pump and pipe clogging and expensive maintenance activities</td>
<td>Triggers against different commands e.g on each pump start, on monitoring if the pump is becoming blocked; in response to a digital input or PLC command</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multi-pump control</td>
<td>Optimal control of applications where several parallel pumps are operated together and the required flow rate is variable</td>
<td>Maintains stable process conditions optimising the speed and number of the pumps needed without over-riding controller</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pump priority</td>
<td>Optimal control of applications where the consumption rate varies based on demand</td>
<td>Operate higher capacity pumps during daytime and smaller units at night. This allows pumps to be operated closer to their best efficiency point</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quick ramps</td>
<td>Drive has special high speed ramps to quickly accelerate bore hole pumps and submerible pumps to operating speed</td>
<td>Allows the pump to operate properly, ensuring the bearings operate properly and reduces turbidity during start-up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Safe torque-off</td>
<td>TÜV certified safely to SL3</td>
<td>Remove the contactor from MCC builds, saving cost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intuitive modern keypad</td>
<td>High contrast, high definition display giving intuitive access to the drive parameters. Built-in “Help” button, giving programming hints. Real-time clock, allows timed tracing of faults and setting of parameters to activate functions at various times of day. Changed parameters menu also included, so you can see your edits</td>
<td>Easy commissioning, programming, maintenance and fault finding, making the drive easy to own and use across all activities. Cloning drives is easy with parameter copying facilities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primary setting menu</td>
<td>Assisted set-up for all of the drive’s common settings. Intuitive and context sensitive makes navigation easier for the user</td>
<td>Even easier to configure the drive to the application</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Text editing capabilities</td>
<td>Rename drive variables or warning messages</td>
<td>Tailor the drive to “speak” in the language of the application</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Improved backups</td>
<td>Keypad can store backups with a time stamp, or automatic backups can be taken. Backups can be viewed before download, or partial downloads can be performed.</td>
<td>Easy to manage installed base and speeds up commissioning. Auto backup means you never forget</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Modern PC tools</td>
<td>Entry level (FOC) and Pro level PC tools are available for commissioning, tuning, parameter management and monitoring</td>
<td>Keep copies of the parameters for back-up. Use the PC tools to optimise the application</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fieldbus gateways</td>
<td>Built-in Modbus using RS 485. Extensive optional plug-in fieldbus modules also available</td>
<td>Reduced cost, full access to industrial networks for monitoring and control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Energy monitoring and optimising features</td>
<td>Drive controls the motor voltage dependant on the load. Drive monitors the saved energy compared to equivalent DOL operation</td>
<td>Consumed energy optimised across the speed and load range. Energy savings presented in local currency and tonnes of CO₂</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24V operation</td>
<td>Power the drive control card, I/O and fieldbus from an external 24V</td>
<td>Safer diagnostics and maintenance activities can be undertaken without the need for mains voltages</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The drive features, specific to water and wastewater applications, are programmed by the most intuitive and user friendly keypad ABB has produced and incorporates an intelligent “primary settings” menu that guides the user through the most common settings.

The drive includes a built in swinging choke harmonic suppression technology as standard, which uses permanent magnet technology, making the package lighter. The drive can control induction, permanent magnet (PM) and SynRM motors. It can accurately catch spinning leads and ride through power dips.

There are more frame sizes, extending the power range to 250 kW in a wall-mounted format and the IP55 variant is extremely compact occupying almost the same space as the IP21 equivalent.

The new PC tool is designed to incorporate all of the latest functionality that new operating systems bring, including a free of charge entry level version and a chargeable Pro version.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No-overload (nominal) use</th>
<th>Light-duty use</th>
<th>Heavy-duty use</th>
<th>Max output A</th>
<th>Frame</th>
<th>Fuse A</th>
<th>Heat dissipation</th>
<th>Cooling requirements</th>
<th>Type (+J400 + H358 to order keypad &amp; SWA gland plate)</th>
<th>Price IP21</th>
<th>Price IP55 (+B056)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pn kW</td>
<td>Ie A</td>
<td>Pe kW</td>
<td>Ie A</td>
<td>Pe kW</td>
<td>Ie A</td>
<td>Type (+J400 + H358 to order keypad &amp; SWA gland plate)</td>
<td>Price IP21</td>
<td>Price IP55 (+B056)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.75 2.6 0.75 2.3 0.55 1.8</td>
<td>3.2</td>
<td>R0 4</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>ACQ580-01-02A6-4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1</td>
<td>3.3</td>
<td>1.1</td>
<td>3.1</td>
<td>0.75</td>
<td>2.6</td>
<td>4.7</td>
<td>R0 6</td>
<td>55</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>ACQ580-01-03A3-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>3.8</td>
<td>1.1</td>
<td>3.3</td>
<td>5.9</td>
<td>R0 6</td>
<td>66</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>ACQ580-01-04A0-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2</td>
<td>5.6</td>
<td>2.2</td>
<td>5.3</td>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>7.2</td>
<td>R0 10</td>
<td>84</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>ACQ580-01-05A6-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>7.2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>6.8</td>
<td>2.2</td>
<td>5.6</td>
<td>10.1</td>
<td>R1 10</td>
<td>106</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>ACQ580-01-07A2-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>9.4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>8.9</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>7.2</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>R1 16</td>
<td>133</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>ACQ580-01-09A4-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.5</td>
<td>12.6</td>
<td>5.5</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>9.4</td>
<td>14.1</td>
<td>R1 16</td>
<td>174</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>ACQ580-01-12A6-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.5</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>7.5</td>
<td>16.2</td>
<td>5.5</td>
<td>12.6</td>
<td>22.7</td>
<td>R2 25</td>
<td>228</td>
<td>128</td>
<td>ACQ580-01-017A-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>23.8</td>
<td>7.5</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>30.6</td>
<td>R2 32</td>
<td>322</td>
<td>128</td>
<td>ACQ580-01-025A-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>30.4</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>24.6</td>
<td>44.3</td>
<td>R3 40</td>
<td>430</td>
<td>116</td>
<td>ACQ580-01-032A-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.5</td>
<td>38</td>
<td>18.5</td>
<td>36.1</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>31.6</td>
<td>56.9</td>
<td>R3 50</td>
<td>525</td>
<td>116</td>
<td>ACQ580-01-038A-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>42.8</td>
<td>18.5</td>
<td>37.7</td>
<td>67.9</td>
<td>R3 63</td>
<td>619</td>
<td>116</td>
<td>ACQ580-01-045A-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>62</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>58</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>44.6</td>
<td>76</td>
<td>R4 80</td>
<td>835</td>
<td>134</td>
<td>ACQ580-01-062A-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37</td>
<td>73</td>
<td>37</td>
<td>68</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>61</td>
<td>104</td>
<td>R4 100</td>
<td>1024</td>
<td>134</td>
<td>ACQ580-01-073A-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45</td>
<td>88</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>82.7</td>
<td>37</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>122</td>
<td>R5 100</td>
<td>1240</td>
<td>139</td>
<td>ACQ580-01-088A-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55</td>
<td>106</td>
<td>55</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>87</td>
<td>148</td>
<td>R5 125</td>
<td>1510</td>
<td>139</td>
<td>ACQ580-01-106A-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>75</td>
<td>145</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>138</td>
<td>55</td>
<td>105</td>
<td>178</td>
<td>R6 160</td>
<td>1476</td>
<td>435</td>
<td>ACQ580-01-145A-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90</td>
<td>189</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>161</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>145</td>
<td>247</td>
<td>R7 250</td>
<td>1976</td>
<td>450</td>
<td>ACQ580-01-169A-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>110</td>
<td>206</td>
<td>110</td>
<td>196</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>169</td>
<td>287</td>
<td>R7 315</td>
<td>2346</td>
<td>550</td>
<td>ACQ580-01-206A-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>132</td>
<td>246</td>
<td>132</td>
<td>234</td>
<td>110</td>
<td>206</td>
<td>350</td>
<td>R8 355</td>
<td>3336</td>
<td>550</td>
<td>ACQ580-01-246A-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>160</td>
<td>260</td>
<td>160</td>
<td>278</td>
<td>132</td>
<td>246</td>
<td>418</td>
<td>R8 425</td>
<td>3936</td>
<td>1150</td>
<td>ACQ580-01-293A-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200</td>
<td>363</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>345</td>
<td>160</td>
<td>293</td>
<td>498</td>
<td>R9 500</td>
<td>4836</td>
<td>1150</td>
<td>ACQ580-01-363A-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>250</td>
<td>430</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>400</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>363</td>
<td>617</td>
<td>R9 630</td>
<td>6036</td>
<td>1150</td>
<td>ACQ580-01-430A-4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For more details, please refer to Technical Catalogue 3AXD50000035866A

For prices on industry specific products please contact ABB’s water and wastewater team.
Low voltage AC drives
ABB drive for water and wastewater
ACQ580-01 – Dimensions and options

Options for ACQ580-01
ACQ580-01 is a wall mounted drive, so all of the options fit inside:
- IP55 variant
- Internal fieldbus options
- Optional additional industrial fieldbus
- Optional relay expansion (CMOD-01)
- Optional isolated PTC option (CMOD-02)
- Optional 115/230 V digital inputs (CHDI-01)
- UK gland box to accommodate SWA cable
- Brake chopper (up to frame R3 fitted as standard)

All ABB water and wastewater drives use the same common options and user interfaces. These are detailed on page 54. They are also part of the “all compatible family” so keypad interfaces, PC tools, parameter structures and prograning methods are all common.

Cold configuration adapter – CCA-01
ACH580 drives can be programmed without the need for mains power or without taking the drive out of the box using the CCA-01. This specifically allows rapid programming for OEM without the need for safe areas in production.

Typical I/O connections for ACQ580
These connections are shown as examples only. Please refer to the User’s Manual for more detailed information and for different I/O configurations.

Dimensions and weights, wall-mounted drives

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Frame size</th>
<th>Height mm</th>
<th>Width mm</th>
<th>Depth mm</th>
<th>Weight kg</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>R0</td>
<td>303</td>
<td>125</td>
<td>210</td>
<td>4.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R1</td>
<td>303</td>
<td>125</td>
<td>223</td>
<td>4.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R2</td>
<td>394</td>
<td>125</td>
<td>227</td>
<td>7.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R3</td>
<td>454</td>
<td>203</td>
<td>228</td>
<td>14.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R4</td>
<td>650</td>
<td>203</td>
<td>258</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R5</td>
<td>732</td>
<td>203</td>
<td>283</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R6</td>
<td>727</td>
<td>252</td>
<td>369</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R7</td>
<td>880</td>
<td>284</td>
<td>370</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R8</td>
<td>965</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>393</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R9</td>
<td>965</td>
<td>380</td>
<td>418</td>
<td>88</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Frame size</th>
<th>Height mm</th>
<th>Width mm</th>
<th>Depth mm</th>
<th>Weight kg</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>R0</td>
<td>303</td>
<td>125</td>
<td>222</td>
<td>5.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R1</td>
<td>303</td>
<td>125</td>
<td>233</td>
<td>5.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R2</td>
<td>394</td>
<td>125</td>
<td>239</td>
<td>8.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R3</td>
<td>454</td>
<td>203</td>
<td>237</td>
<td>15.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R4</td>
<td>600</td>
<td>203</td>
<td>265</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R5</td>
<td>732</td>
<td>203</td>
<td>320</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R6</td>
<td>726</td>
<td>252</td>
<td>380</td>
<td>45.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R7</td>
<td>880</td>
<td>284</td>
<td>381</td>
<td>55.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R8</td>
<td>965</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>452</td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R9</td>
<td>965</td>
<td>380</td>
<td>477</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Standard on R6 frames and above and is optional on smaller frames (requires a CMOD)
Low voltage AC drives
ABB drive for water and wastewater
ACQ580 – Common user interfaces

Control panel
State-of-the-art high resolution keypad brings a new level of usability to the drives marketplace. The ACQ580 uses a specific keypad with hand/off/auto buttons. The ACQ580 includes a “primary settings” menu that is suited to water and wastewater industry users, a guided set-up procedure similar to that of a smart phone.

Bluetooth keypad and DriveTune app
Using a special Bluetooth enabled keypad, ABB can offer connection to the mobile phone using an app called DriveTune. There are versions of the app for iOS and Android operating systems.

I/O extension and external 24 V (+L501)
The CMOD-01 offer additional two relay outputs (changeover) and one digital output, as well as giving a place to connect external 24 V (AC or DC).

Fieldbus (various and codes)
The ACQ580 supports an extensive list of fieldbus modules including Profibus, Ethernet IP and Devicenet for connectivity to industrial networks. These modules are common with other drives within the ABB drives range.

Panel/keypad bus adapter - CDPI-01 (+K450)
The ACQ580 can be connected onto a panel bus, where 32 drives can be daisy chained using a simple CAT5 cable. The chain would have one keypad mounted on the cabinet door, communicating to the other drives via the CDPI module, which fits where the keypad normally connects on the drive.

Interface
- Keypad connection
- Cold configuration port
- Analogue I/O
- 24 V supply
- Digital inputs
- Safe torque-off
- Fieldbus slot
- Embedded Fieldbus
- Relay outputs
- CMOD slot
- Power and motor connections

Isolated PTC input and external 24 V (+L523)
The CMOD-02 offers an isolated PTC interface, as well as giving a place to connect external 24 V (AC or DC).

High voltage I/O extension (+L512)
The CHDI-01 offers an additional six high voltage (115/230 V) digital inputs and two relay outputs (changeover); allows high voltage connection without interposing relays.

Drive Composer PC tool
Drive Composer is the new PC tool for the ACQ580 family. The PC tool comes in two variants – the “Entry” level is a free of charge point-to-point tool and allows simple parameter editing and storage, as well as monitoring and commissioning support, while the “Pro” level has all of this as well as animated control diagrams and extended commissioning, monitoring and diagnostic support, as well as the ability to program the safety functions. The Pro tool allows the user to connect to multiple drives either over “panel bus” where the keypad port is used, or ever Ethernet.

Door mounting kit, DPMP-EXT, (IP65)
The keypad can be mounted onto a panel door using a two part kit. The kit includes a CDPI-01 which is mounted onto the drive, then the DPMP-02 (pictured) is mounted onto the door and a CAT5 cable is used to connect between the two. When keypad is installed the assembly is IP65.
Drives and controls, motors and mechanical power transmission catalogue

Low voltage AC drives

**ABB drive for water and wastewater**

0.37 kW to 500 kW, ACQ810

Motor control method – DTC

200/480 V, 3-phase supply, 0.37 kW - 500 kW

What is an ABB drive for water and wastewater?

This industry-specific drive is designed for all of the applications commonly used in the water and wastewater industry. The modules feature tailor-made pump control functions for single and multi-pump systems. These functions ensure smooth, disturbance-free operation of water and wastewater processes, maximising energy efficiency while reducing unnecessary downtime. The drives’ pump-specific functions decrease the life cycle cost of the pumping system, helping to save time and money. The power range is extended with the introduction of the G1 and G2 frame sizes.

Highlights

- Optimal pump control for various applications
- Intelligent solution for controlling pump performance
- Remote monitoring and diagnostics
- Pump auto change
- Full multipump software functionality
- Flow measurement feature suitable, ideal for leak detection
- Anti-jam pump cleaning algorithms
- Easy and cost-effective cabinet assembly

Where can it be used?

The ABB industry-specific drive module can be used for the variable-speed applications contained within the water and wastewater industry, to optimise the system and to save energy. The modules are designed for cabinet assembly and are easily mounted side-by-side. Intelligent start-up assistant ensures that drive commissioning is straightforward. The functions needed for most pumping systems can be easily implemented with the pre-programmed macros. Starting up a pumping system and optimising its performance is extremely easy.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Advantage</th>
<th>Benefit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Direct torque control</td>
<td>Premium motor control platform</td>
<td>Lower losses, improved energy saving</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soft pipe filling</td>
<td>Provides a pump with a smooth build-up of flow and pressure in pipes</td>
<td>This avoids pressure peaks and reduces the stress on weak or ageing water mains when demand changes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pump cleaning or anti-jam</td>
<td>Used in wastewater pumping stations to prevent pump and pipe clogging and expensive maintenance activities</td>
<td>The function can be set to trigger against different commands e.g. on each pump start; on monitoring if the pump is becoming blocked, in response to a digital input or PLC command. If the pump cleaning function runs too often, an alarm is raised. Benefits: reduced downtime, increased efficiency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flow calculation</td>
<td>The drive has a flow meter routine that very accurately determines the flow rate within a process</td>
<td>Avoids the need for costly external flow meters and is suitable for applications where the flow data is not needed for invoicing purposes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Level control</td>
<td>Used to effectively control the filling or emptying of water or wastewater storage tanks</td>
<td>Fast-ramp starting creates a flush effect to keep pipes clear. Users can define the “efficiency speed” based on the pumps best efficiency point</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multi-pump control</td>
<td>Optimal control of applications where several parallel pumps are operated together and the required flow rate is variable</td>
<td>Maintains stable process conditions optimising the speed and number of the pumps needed without over-riding controller</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pump priority</td>
<td>Optimal control of applications where the consumption rate varies based on demand</td>
<td>Operate higher capacity pumps during daytime and smaller units at night. This allows pumps to be operated closer to their best efficiency point</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pump specific protection features</td>
<td>The protection functions indicate if the pre-defined process conditions change</td>
<td>Underload and overload functions are pre-defined across the speed range at five distinct points. Belt breaks or dry sumps can be detected</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Safe torque-off</td>
<td>TÜV certified safely to SIL3</td>
<td>Remove the contactor from MCC builds, saving cost</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For further information, see Technical Catalogue 3AUA0000055685
Low voltage AC drives

ABB industrial drive

0.55 kW to 5600 kW, ACS880

Motor control method – DTC or scalar

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Voltage Range</th>
<th>Supply Type</th>
<th>Power Range</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>208 / 240 V</td>
<td>3-phase supply</td>
<td>powers dependent on range</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>380 / 415 V</td>
<td>3-phase supply</td>
<td>powers dependent on range</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>380 / 500 V</td>
<td>3-phase supply</td>
<td>powers dependent on range</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>525 / 690 V</td>
<td>3-phase supply</td>
<td>powers dependent on range</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

What is the ABB industrial drive?
The ACS880 is a build to order, custom configurable drive encompassing a wide power range with a choice of rectifiers and build formats, the most comprehensive industrial drive on the market. The ACS880 contains a new harmonised parameter set, taking its features from all of the best functions within the existing ABB drive’s family. The drive is programmed by ABB’s most intuitive and user-friendly keypad yet. A new PC tool incorporates all of the latest functionality including a free-of-charge entry level version and a professional level version. The drive also contains the latest 4th generation DTC motor control core, making the drive all-compatible with any motor available on the market including asynchronous (induction), permanent magnet and synchronous reluctance (SynRM) motors.

Where can it be used?
The ABB industrial drive is targeted at demanding industrial applications offering constant torque and torque at zero speed. Suitable applications include cranes, winders, hoists, extruders, heavy conveyors and crushers. Applications with high breakaway torque, like rubber mixers and high precision applications like paper machines and engine dynamometers are easily handled by the drive.
The ACS880 is a system drive that is fully scaleable and can be tailored to any application, allowing architecture to be either centralised (traditional PLC approach) or de-centralised, by operating the safety and the application programmes inside the drive, which saves installation and cabling costs.

Highlights
– Built-to-order and customisable
– Wide power range and choice of rectifiers, modules, cabinets or multidrives
– Marine certified
– Built-in safety functionality to IEC 62061 and ISO 13849-1
– Removable memory unit providing zero re-commissioning
– Adaptive programming as standard, full IEC61131 (CODESYS) as an option
– Common user and process interface with fieldbus
– Common software tools for sizing and commissioning
– Innovative hardware variants including modular and cabinet installation kits
– Energy efficiency counters and energy optimiser
– Load analyser for optimised dimensioning of the drive, motor and process
### Feature | Advantage | Benefit
--- | --- | ---
Fully customisable built-to-order | Drive can be ordered and built to the exact requirements of the customer. Wall mount, cabinet built, module kits, multidrives, all formats available. The formats can include 6- and 12-pulse, regenerative or ultra low harmonic rectifiers. | The drive can arrive in exactly the format required by the application; including HW variants, built-in safety and PLC programme all in one package
Direct torque control (DTC) | Full torque at zero speed without encoder. Accurate speed and torque control. | Consistently excellent performance ensures that drive is not the limiting factor in the process
Control all motor types | Induction motor, permanent magnet motor and SynRM control all possible with the same drive. | High quality control allows simpler selection and easy upgrades in the future
Intuitive modern keypad | High contrast, high definition display giving intuitive access to the drive parameters. | Easy commissioning, programming, maintenance and fault finding
Start-up assistant | Guides user through all essential settings without going to parameter list. | Easy set-up of parameters, your own language, on-line information system always available
Removable memory unit | Programme, parameter edits, motor calibrations and fault histories stored in the removable memory unit. | Zero re-commissioning in case of drive failure, just move the memory unit, very short MTTR
Safe torque-off (STO) | Standard feature always in the drive. SIL3 PLe, TÜV approved. | Convenient safety built-in. ATEX approved for hazardous areas
Adaptive programming | Drive contains a freely programmable environment allowing changes and adaptations to the drive parameters. Easy to use and flexible. | The drive can easily be flexed to meet the needs of the application, without external devices, existing controls, timers, relays etc
IEC61131 programming (CODESYS) | Familiar PLC programming on the drive de-centralise the application, import from other devices. | Decide to have distributed or central control of your process. Program can copy from PLC to drive using same tool
Integrated, patented, TÜV approved safety module option | No need to use external programmable safety hardware for drive specific functions. The module carries out drive specific safety functionality more efficiently than external programmable devices, as they are designed to work directly with the drive. Patented safety monitoring functions allow the drive to undertake speed related safety functions with no additional speed feedback devices needed. | Minimise installation time and space. Shorter design times using TÜV approved module. Drive specific safety functions save time and money as they are built-in, and do not require additional speed monitoring devices to operate
Modern PC tools; DriveComposer | Entry level free-of-charge and Pro level PC tools are available for commissioning, tuning, parameter management and monitoring. | Keep copies of the parameters for back-up. Use the PC tools to optimise the application
Fieldbus gateway | Snap-on module that is easily mounted inside drive. | Access to all major automation platforms
I/O extension modules | Additional I/O can be added to the drive. | Easy addition of extra I/O to allow the drive to control the application properly
Speed feedback modules | A large array or high performance speed feedback devices can be interfaced to the drive via these modules. | Higher performances can be achieved or position control can be undertaken
Energy monitoring and optimising features | Drive controls the motor voltage dependant on the load. Drive monitors the saved energy compared to equivalent DOL operation. Consumed energy optimised across the speed and load range. Energy savings presented in local currency and tonnes of CO₂. | Consumption energy optimised across the speed and load range. Energy savings presented in local currency and tonnes of CO₂.
Drive-to-drive link | Built-in industrial control link. Built-in ability to undertake master-follower applications with no extra hardware. | Built-in ability to undertake master-follower applications with no extra hardware
ATEX approved packages | ATEX 2014/34/EU type tested motor/drive packages from one supplier. ATEX STO and ATEX PTC connections. | Easy selection of fully approved ATEX drive and motor packages, easier to satisfy ATEX rules with a more cost effective offering
Specific firmware for applications | Crane, winch, winder etc. ABB designed and verified firmware sets ready made and documented. | Quick realisation of complex applications using ABB expertise, faster and cheaper engineering
Low voltage AC drives
ABB industrial drive

ACS880-01 - Variants, ratings, types, voltages and prices

Wall-mounted single drive
- 0.55 kW to 250 kW, (208 - 690 V)
- Largest power wall-mounted drive on market
- Coated boards as standard
- TÜV approved safe torque-off (STO) to SIL 3 PL e standard
- IP21 as standard, IP55 as option
- Wide range of built-in options
- EMC filter for C3 category according to EN 61800-3 (2004) standard (category C2 optional)
- Optional UK cable box for SWA cables
- Optional internal fieldbus
- Optional safety module for extended safety functionality
- Optional I/O expansion
- Optional IEC61131 programming (CODESYS), full system capability

For further information, see Technical Catalogue 3AUA0000098111

380 to 415 V, 3-phase supply voltage. The power ratings are valid at nominal voltage (400 V)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No-overload (nominal) use</th>
<th>Light-duty use</th>
<th>Heavy-duty use</th>
<th>Max output A</th>
<th>Frame</th>
<th>Fuse A</th>
<th>Heat dissipation</th>
<th>Cooling requirements</th>
<th>Type (+ E200, + R700 + H358 to order EMC &amp; SWA gland plate)</th>
<th>Price IP21</th>
<th>Price IP55 (+B056)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pn kW</td>
<td>Ie A</td>
<td>Pd kW</td>
<td>Id kW</td>
<td>PH kW</td>
<td>PH A</td>
<td>W</td>
<td>m/h</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.75</td>
<td>2.4</td>
<td>0.75</td>
<td>2.3</td>
<td>0.55</td>
<td>1.8</td>
<td>R1</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>44</td>
<td>ACS880-01-02A4-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1</td>
<td>3.3</td>
<td>1.1</td>
<td>3.1</td>
<td>0.75</td>
<td>2.4</td>
<td>R1</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>44</td>
<td>ACS880-01-03A3-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>4.0</td>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>3.8</td>
<td>1.1</td>
<td>3.3</td>
<td>R1</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>52</td>
<td>44</td>
<td>ACS880-01-04A0-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2</td>
<td>5.6</td>
<td>2.2</td>
<td>5.3</td>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>4.0</td>
<td>R1</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>73</td>
<td>44</td>
<td>ACS880-01-05A6-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.0</td>
<td>8.0</td>
<td>3.0</td>
<td>6.8</td>
<td>2.2</td>
<td>5.6</td>
<td>R1</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>94</td>
<td>44</td>
<td>ACS880-01-07A2-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.0</td>
<td>10.0</td>
<td>4.0</td>
<td>8.9</td>
<td>3.0</td>
<td>7.2</td>
<td>R1</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>122</td>
<td>44</td>
<td>ACS880-01-09A4-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.5</td>
<td>12.9</td>
<td>5.5</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>4.0</td>
<td>9.4</td>
<td>R1</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>172</td>
<td>44</td>
<td>ACS880-01-12A6-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.5</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>7.5</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>5.5</td>
<td>12.6</td>
<td>R1</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>232</td>
<td>88</td>
<td>ACS880-01-017A-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>7.5</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>R2</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>337</td>
<td>88</td>
<td>ACS880-01-025A-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>R2</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>457</td>
<td>134</td>
<td>ACS880-01-032A-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.5</td>
<td>38</td>
<td>18.5</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>R3</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>562</td>
<td>134</td>
<td>ACS880-01-038A-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>43</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>38</td>
<td>R4</td>
<td>63</td>
<td>667</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>ACS880-01-045A-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>61</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>58</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>R4</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>907</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>ACS880-01-061A-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>37</td>
<td>68</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>61</td>
<td>R5</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>1117</td>
<td>280</td>
<td>ACS880-01-072A-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45</td>
<td>87</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>83</td>
<td>37</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>R5</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>1120</td>
<td>280</td>
<td>ACS880-01-087A-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55</td>
<td>105</td>
<td>55</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>87</td>
<td>R6</td>
<td>125</td>
<td>1295</td>
<td>435</td>
<td>ACS880-01-105A-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>75</td>
<td>145</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>138</td>
<td>55</td>
<td>105</td>
<td>R6</td>
<td>160</td>
<td>1440</td>
<td>435</td>
<td>ACS880-01-145A-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
<td>169</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>161</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>145</td>
<td>R7</td>
<td>1940</td>
<td>450</td>
<td>ACS880-01-169A-3</td>
<td>£7,344</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>110</td>
<td>206</td>
<td>110</td>
<td>196</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>169</td>
<td>R7</td>
<td>1940</td>
<td>450</td>
<td>ACS880-01-206A-3</td>
<td>£8,682</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>132</td>
<td>246</td>
<td>132</td>
<td>234</td>
<td>110</td>
<td>206</td>
<td>R8</td>
<td>3300</td>
<td>550</td>
<td>ACS880-01-246A-3</td>
<td>£10,583</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>160</td>
<td>290</td>
<td>160</td>
<td>278</td>
<td>132</td>
<td>246</td>
<td>R8</td>
<td>3900</td>
<td>550</td>
<td>ACS880-01-293A-3</td>
<td>£12,238</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200</td>
<td>363</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>345</td>
<td>160</td>
<td>283</td>
<td>R9</td>
<td>4800</td>
<td>880</td>
<td>ACS880-01-363A-3</td>
<td>£15,108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>250</td>
<td>430</td>
<td>250</td>
<td>400</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>363</td>
<td>R9</td>
<td>5400</td>
<td>1150</td>
<td>ACS880-01-430A-3</td>
<td>£18,385</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*130% overload, **125% overload
1 For fuse selection, refer to the hardware manual. Weak networks may require aR fuses
4 These fuses are aR fuses, ABB does not recommend gG fuses on these larger drives
Note: Current rating match IE3 motor nameplates
Note: Prices include keypad, EMC filter and SWA gland plates and full manuals
Low voltage AC drives
ABB industrial drive

ACS880-01 – Dimensions and options

Drive dimensions and weights wall mounted drives

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Frame size</th>
<th>Height IP21</th>
<th>Depth IP21</th>
<th>Width mm</th>
<th>Depth mm</th>
<th>Weight kg</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>R1</td>
<td>405</td>
<td>370</td>
<td>155</td>
<td>226</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R2</td>
<td>405</td>
<td>370</td>
<td>155</td>
<td>249</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R3</td>
<td>471</td>
<td>420</td>
<td>172</td>
<td>261</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R4</td>
<td>573</td>
<td>490</td>
<td>203</td>
<td>274</td>
<td>18.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R5</td>
<td>730</td>
<td>596</td>
<td>203</td>
<td>274</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R6</td>
<td>726</td>
<td>569</td>
<td>251</td>
<td>357</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R7</td>
<td>882</td>
<td>600</td>
<td>284</td>
<td>365</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R8</td>
<td>963</td>
<td>681</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>386</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R9</td>
<td>955</td>
<td>680</td>
<td>380</td>
<td>413</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

H1 - Height with cable entry box
H2 - Height without cable entry box

Width and depth with cable entry box

Options

ACS880-01 is a wall-mounted drive, so all of the options fit inside:

- IP55 variant
- Can be ordered without covers for cabinet installation
- Extensive range of expansion I/O options
- Extensive range of fieldbus options
- IEC61131 (CODESYS) environment
- Built-in safety option module, TÜV approved
- UK gland box to accommodate SWA cable
- Different levels of EMC compliance
- Extended warranty
- ATEX compliant options

All ABB industrial drives use the same common options and user interfaces. These are detailed on page 65.

- I/O modules can be chosen from analogue expansion, digital expansion, encoder and resolver feedback options
- Fieldbus modules can be connected to any slot and all of the major industrial fieldbus modules are available. The drive also supports two fieldbus modules at a time, so can control via a traditional industrial fieldbus, but data gather via an Ethernet based protocol
- Remote monitoring modules can be employed to monitor the drive over the web
- The safety module occupies a separate dedicated connection point ensuring safety integrity
- The drive is operated and commissioned either from a keypad or from a PC tool. The PC tool used with ACS880 is Drive Composer
- 32 drives can be connected onto a panelbus. The panelbus can be used to communicate to many drives, either using the keypad or the composer Pro tool
- 156K of IEC61131 environment is available

User interfaces

Please refer to page 65 for details of the ACS880 common user interfaces.
Low voltage AC drives
ABB industrial drive
ACS880-04- Variants, ratings, types, voltages and prices

Single drive modules
- 200 kW to 1400 kW, (380 - 690 V)
- Highest power density from a module on the market, extremely compact power module
- Wheeled module supplied with extendable ramp
- Coated boards as standard
- Speed controlled redundant fan cooling arrangement
- TÜV approved safe torque-off (STO) to SIL 3 PL e standard
- Plastic IP20 shrouds supplied which can be substituted for a pair of IP20 cabling panels which allow the module to be removed from the cabinet without disturbing wiring
- Brake chopper optional
- Wide range of cabinet installation options, including instructions for Rittal cabinet installation
- EMC filter for C3 category according to EN 61800-3 (2004)
- Optional common-mode filter
- Optional fieldbus modules, safety module, I/O expansion
- Optional fan kits and cabinet installation kits

The following table details the R10 and R11 frames (pictured above).

For more information – see Technical Catalogue 3UA0000115038

380 to 415 V, 3-phase supply voltage. The power ratings are valid at nominal voltage (400 V)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No-overload (nominal) use</th>
<th>Light-duty use</th>
<th>Heavy-duty use</th>
<th>Max output A</th>
<th>Frame</th>
<th>Fuse A</th>
<th>Heat dissipation</th>
<th>Cooling requirements</th>
<th>Price</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pn, kW</td>
<td>In, A</td>
<td>Pm, kW</td>
<td>Im, A</td>
<td>Pmax, kW</td>
<td>Imax, A</td>
<td>Rs, V</td>
<td>Rs, A</td>
<td>Ph, kW</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>250</td>
<td>505</td>
<td>250</td>
<td>485</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>361</td>
<td>560</td>
<td>R10</td>
<td>800</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>315</td>
<td>585</td>
<td>315</td>
<td>575</td>
<td>250</td>
<td>429</td>
<td>880</td>
<td>R10</td>
<td>1000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>355</td>
<td>650</td>
<td>355</td>
<td>634</td>
<td>250</td>
<td>477</td>
<td>730</td>
<td>R10</td>
<td>1000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>400</td>
<td>725</td>
<td>400</td>
<td>715</td>
<td>315</td>
<td>566</td>
<td>850</td>
<td>R11</td>
<td>1250</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>450</td>
<td>820</td>
<td>450</td>
<td>810</td>
<td>355</td>
<td>625</td>
<td>1020</td>
<td>R11</td>
<td>1600</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>500</td>
<td>880</td>
<td>500</td>
<td>865</td>
<td>400</td>
<td>725</td>
<td>1100</td>
<td>R11</td>
<td>1600</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*For fuse selection refer to the hardware manual, weak networks may require a different rating
*Price shown is complete with keypad door mounting kit, cabling panels, EMC filter, CMF filter and manuals

The ACS880-04 can be supplied in two major variant variants. The standard variant comes complete with IP20 shrouds (plastic) a telescopic ramp, separate control unit and keypad. The customer power cabling is taken directly to the module and would need to be disconnected to allow module removal.

The second variant comes complete with cable panels (option + H381) which fit inside the cabinet. The customer power cabling is attached to these panels, which allows the module to be removed without disconnecting the customer cabling.

In both cases the module is withdrawn down the ramp which is provided.

There is a wide range of other control card and keypad mounting options to allow the unit to integrate into a cabinet. The manual gives extensive instructions for Rittal cabinet installation, including a list of Rittal parts required.
Low voltage AC drives
ABB industrial drive

ACS880-04 – Dimensions and options

**Options**
ACS880-04 is a cabinet mounted drive, so the options are designed to complement cabinet installation:

- Cabling is arranged to come in at the top and motor out at the bottom
- Standard offering comes with plastic IP20 shrouds for input and output, and motor terminals are supplied “full sized” allowing for parallel motor cables. The standard configuration is supplied with a separate control unit and keypad
- Option +H370 requests “full sized” terminals on the input power connections, allowing for parallel mains cables
- Option +H381 request full cable panels, which bolt onto the side of the module and onto the side of the cabinet wall (replaces the standard IP20 shrouds and fixed full size cable terminals)
- Option +H356 request DC terminals
- Option +P905 request the control unit to be fitted to the power module
- Option +J414 integrates the control panel onto the front of the power module
- Option +J410 includes a keypad door mounting kit with the module
- EMC filters and common mode filters can be included
- Shrouds, keypads and wheeled pedestal can be removed if required
- Fan kits and cabinet assembly kits are also available
- ATEX compliant options
- Extended power range by paralleling modules (-XT)

All ACS880 drives use the same common options and user interfaces. These are detailed on page 65.

- Fieldbus modules can be connected to any slot and all of the major industrial fieldbus modules are available. The drive also supports two fieldbus modules at a time, so can control via a traditional industrial fieldbus, but data gather via an Ethernet based protocol
- Remote monitoring modules can also be employed to monitor the drive over the internet
- The safety module occupies a separate dedicated connection point ensuring safety integrity
- The drive is operated and commissioned either from a keypad or from a PC tool. The PC tool used with ACS880 is Drive Composer
- 32 drives can be connected onto a panelbus. The panelbus can be used to communicate to many drives using the keypad or the Composer Pro PC tool

**User interfaces**
The ACS880-04 can be supplied with a keypad door mounting arrangement, which requires a single rectangular hole for the cabinet door.

Please refer to page 65 for details of the other ACS880 common user interfaces.

---

**Dimensions and weights for drives modules**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Basic module dimensions (no shrouds or panels)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Frame size</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R11</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Module dimensions including the cable panels +H381**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Frame size</th>
<th>Height (H3)</th>
<th>Height (H4)</th>
<th>Width (W2)</th>
<th>Depth</th>
<th>Weight</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>mm</td>
<td>(no pedestal)</td>
<td>mm</td>
<td>mm</td>
<td>kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R10</td>
<td>1591</td>
<td>1486</td>
<td>329</td>
<td>506</td>
<td>161</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R11</td>
<td>1741</td>
<td>1616</td>
<td>329</td>
<td>506</td>
<td>199</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Cabinet-built single drive

- 45 kW to 2,800 kW, (380 - 690 V)
- IP21 as standard, IP42 and IP54 as options
- 250 kW based on a single module including rectifier and inverter
- Coated boards as standard
- TÜV approved safe torque-off (STO) to SIL 3 PL e standard
- TÜV approved emergency stopping options
- Extremely compact, internal swinging gate for control options minimises cabinet size, but ensures easy access
- Internal customer wiring is redesigned to give easier access, with pluggable connectors included
- Drive module can be extracted using a set of maintenance rails
- Factory-built cabinet with EMC and thermally type-tested for trouble-free operation
- Extensive range of standard options, that are increased to incorporate the most popular engineered options ordered with the ACS800 range
- Optional UK cable for SWA cables
- Optional motor thermistor and PTC connections
- Internal fieldbus options
- Optional safety module
- Optional I/O modules
- ATEX compliant options

For further information, see Technical Catalogue 3AUA0000098111

---

### 380 to 415 V, 3-phase supply voltage. The power ratings are valid at nominal voltage (400 V)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No-overload (nominal) use</th>
<th>Light-duty use</th>
<th>Heavy-duty use</th>
<th>Max output A</th>
<th>Frame</th>
<th>Fuse A</th>
<th>Heat dissipation</th>
<th>Cooling requirements</th>
<th>Type (= E200, + R700 + H358 to order EMC &amp; SWA gland plate)</th>
<th>Price</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pn kW</td>
<td>In A</td>
<td>Pn A</td>
<td>In A</td>
<td>Pxd kW</td>
<td>lxd A</td>
<td>Pxd kW</td>
<td>lxd A</td>
<td>aR</td>
<td>W</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55</td>
<td>105</td>
<td>55</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>87</td>
<td>148</td>
<td>R6</td>
<td>160</td>
<td>1795</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>75</td>
<td>145</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>138</td>
<td>55</td>
<td>105</td>
<td>178</td>
<td>R6</td>
<td>250</td>
<td>1940</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90</td>
<td>169</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>161</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>145</td>
<td>247</td>
<td>R7</td>
<td>250</td>
<td>2440</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>110</td>
<td>206</td>
<td>110</td>
<td>196</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>169</td>
<td>287</td>
<td>R7</td>
<td>315</td>
<td>2810</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>132</td>
<td>248</td>
<td>132</td>
<td>234</td>
<td>110</td>
<td>206</td>
<td>350</td>
<td>R8</td>
<td>400</td>
<td>3800</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>160</td>
<td>293</td>
<td>160</td>
<td>278</td>
<td>132</td>
<td>246</td>
<td>418</td>
<td>R8</td>
<td>500</td>
<td>4400</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200</td>
<td>363</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>345</td>
<td>160</td>
<td>293</td>
<td>498</td>
<td>R9</td>
<td>630</td>
<td>5300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>250</td>
<td>430</td>
<td>250</td>
<td>428</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>363</td>
<td>545</td>
<td>R9</td>
<td>700</td>
<td>6500</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*130% overload, **125% overload
† For fuse selection, refer to the hardware manual
ABB recommends the use of aR fuses for their cabinet drives, other fuses could be used if their melting curve matches ABB’s recommendations
Low voltage AC drives  
ABB industrial drive  
ACS880-07 – Dimensions and options

### Dimensions and weights, for cabinet-built drives

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Frame size</th>
<th>Height H1 IP22/42 mm</th>
<th>Height H2 IP54 mm</th>
<th>Width mm</th>
<th>Depth mm</th>
<th>Weight kg</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>R6</td>
<td>2145</td>
<td>2315</td>
<td>430</td>
<td>673</td>
<td>240</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R7</td>
<td>2145</td>
<td>2315</td>
<td>430</td>
<td>673</td>
<td>250</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R8</td>
<td>2145</td>
<td>2315</td>
<td>430</td>
<td>673</td>
<td>265</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R9</td>
<td>2145</td>
<td>2315</td>
<td>630</td>
<td>698</td>
<td>375</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Larger powers use R8i modules, please contact ABB for information.  
Note: these are the dimensions of the basic cabinet, dimensions will change with the addition of some options.

### Options

ACS880-07 is a cabinet-built drive, so its options fit inside the cabinet. The cabinet drive can be fitted with:

- IP21, IP42, IP54, variants  
- Emergency stop variants, TÜV approved  
- Motor thermistor relays  
- Marine construction  
- UL approved components  
- Various types of cable markings, cabinet heaters, door furniture and lighting etc.  
- Top or bottom cable entry for either motor or power cables  
- UK gland plates for SWA cables  
- 24 V control inside the cabinet  
- Different levels of EMC compliance  
- Extended warranty  
- Additionally, ABB can accommodate any specialised option or feature by using its in-house application design team  
- ATEX compliant options

ACS880-07 comes with options that are fitted to the drive module which is inside the cabinet:

- The drive module has three slots for I/O and fieldbus expansion and one drive-to-drive serial communication link.  
- I/O modules can be chosen from analogue expansion, digital expansion, encoder and resolver feedback options  
- Fieldbus modules can be connected to any slot and all of the major industrial fieldbus modules are available. The drive also supports two fieldbus modules at a time, so can control, via a traditional industrial fieldbus, but data gathers via an Ethernet-based protocol  
- Remote monitoring modules can be employed to monitor the drive over the internet  
- The safety module occupies a separate dedicated connection point ensuring safety integrity  
- The drive is operated and commissioned either from a keypad or from a PC tool. The PC tool used with ACS880 is Drive Composer  
- 32 drives can be connected onto a panelbus. The panelbus can be used to communicate to many drives, either using the keypad or the Composer Pro tool

### User interfaces

Please refer to page 65 for details of the ACS880 common user interfaces
Low voltage AC drives
ABB industrial drive

ACS880 – Multidrive

A multidrive is a custom-made system to suit a larger application or a process line. The system contains multiple inverter stages of differing size, supplied from a common DC bus.

ABB can provide a ready-made cabinet, or it can provide system integrators with a comprehensive range of power modules and mechanical kits to build bespoke cabinets for end clients.

**Multidrive cabinets**
- 1.5 kW to 5600 kW
- IP21 as standard IP42 as option
- High packing density with 16 inverter units (up to frame size R2i) can be installed into one 1000 mm cabinet
- Diode bridge that is highly reliable with high power density
- Fast connectors for motor cables in the bottom part of the cabinet, making installation easy
- Integrated safety including safe torque-off (STO) as standard with several safety functions as options
- Coated boards as standard
- Braking options
- DC fuse disconnectors, DC fuses or DC fuse switch including charging circuit for inverters
- Cabinet light and heater options
- Highly efficient thermal handling as heat loss of each inverter unit is guided to the back of the cabinet. All cabinets are their own separate compartment
- Long lifetime capacitors and high efficiency cooling fan with speed or on-off control
- TÜV approved emergency stops
- ACS880 user interfaces described later

**Multidrive modules**
- 1.5 kW to 3200 kW
- A range of IP20 modules and IP00 kits to generate bespoke multidrive systems built-into system integrators own panels
- Modules have no rectifiers, they are inverters only and range in frames from R2i to R8i (i=inverter only)
- Contain internal pre-charge circuits making them easier to integrate
- Selection of rectifiers available to generate DC link for the system. Active IGBT rectifiers and diode modules are available
- New style diode module (DxD) only contains diodes, making it more competitively priced and more reliable
- New RRU modules, regenerative rectifiers, cost efficient regeneration
- Cabinet kits ensure easy integration
- New redundancy configurations for the modules and the fan control for better problem ridethrough

For further information, see Technical Catalogue 3AUA0000115037

For further information, see Technical Catalogue 3AUA0000115038

- Safe torque-off (STO) as standard with several safety functions as options using the new safety module
- Coated boards as standard
Low voltage AC drives
ABB industrial drive
ACS880 – Common user interfaces

Control panel/keypad
State-of-the-art high resolution keypad brings a new level of usability to the drives marketplace. The keypad ensures maximum usability and intuitive use. The keypad display is extremely high definition and is visible in any control room. Innovative views, transitions and screen will be very familiar to users of smart phones. The display supports graphics and icons to help the user navigate. The keypad also supports text editing to allow users to re-name fault messages to match plant specific actions. Customer specific start-up images and parameter favourites make the keypad easily tailorable to customers and OEMs alike.

Bluetooth keypad and DriveTune app
Using a special Bluetooth enabled keypad, ABB can offer connection to the mobile phone using an app called DriveTune. There are versions of the app for IOS and Android operating systems.

Removable memory unit
The memory unit stores the complete parameter and firmware set for the drive. Should a drive need to be replaced, swapping the memory unit to the new drive will transfer a complete drive setup – absolutely no recommissioning is required. This reduces down time.

Fieldbus
The ACS880 supports an extensive list of fieldbus modules for connectivity to industrial networks. These modules are common with other drives within the ABB drives range. Two modules can be operated together.

Expansion for analogue and digital I/O and speed feedback
Additional I/O can be added to the ACS880. This I/O can be addressed by the fieldbus so that the ACS880 can be used as an I/O “nest”, giving connectability from the process to the drive, for example, flow or level transducers. All modern speed feedback devices are supported.

Safety modules built in, FSO-12, FSO-21 and FSE-31
SIL3 rated TÜV approved safety modules. FSO-12 and FSO-21 offer a wide range of functions from the IEC 61800-5-2 standard. FSE-31 offers a safe encoder interface, and the whole family can communicate over a ProﬁSafe network.

ATEX approves PTC interface FPTC-02
ACS880 has an ATEX certified STO, meaning no “upstream” contactor is required. With the FPTC-02 the motor PTC can be connected directly to the drive (no external relays). The FPTC-02 has a direct connection to the STO (and can connect to the FSO if needed) making a totally integrated ATEX solution.

Drive Composer PC tool
New PC tool for the ACS880 family come in two variants – the “entry” level is a free of charge point-to-point tool and allows simple parameter editing and storage, as well as monitoring and commissioning support, while the “Pro” level has all of this as well as animated control diagrams and extended commissioning, monitoring and diagnostic support, as well as the ability to program the safety functions. The Pro tool also allows the user to connect to multiple drives either over “panelbus” where the keypad port is used, or over Ethernet.
Typical I/O and control connections
The ABB industrial drive family uses the same keypad and software structure throughout its entire range. There are three control cards that have different physical shapes, but the same interfaces. All I/Os are fully configurable to be whatever function is required. The diagram shows a typical I/O connection.

The ACS880 uses macros to configure its I/O. The macros pre-define the I/O functionality to comply with popular industrial configurations. It is also possible to configure the I/O manually to any function required.
Low harmonic, active rectifier drives
These are a dedicated range of low harmonic drives based on active rectifier technology. No regenerative capability ensures no mistakes on generator supplies, while still retaining a low 2-4 percent total harmonic distortion (THD) signature.

ACS800-31, wall-mounted
- 5.5 kW to 110 kW (230 - 690 V)
- IP21 as standard
- Single package for easy cabinet installation, reducing installation time and cabinet space

ACS800-37 and ACS880-37 cabinet-built
- ACS800 power range from 37 kW to 2700 kW (230 to 690 V)
- ACS880 power range from 250 kW to 3200 kW
- IP21 as standard; IP22, IP42, IP54 and IP54 R available as options
- Wheel-out power modules for improved manual handling
- Plug-in power connectors for easy maintenance and redundancy
- Power module redundancy for improved availability
- Factory-built cabinets ensure good installation

The R5 and R6 modules are detailed below. Please contact ABB if you require higher powers. Also, fully regenerative products are available - ACS800-11 and ACS800-17. Please refer to page 69 for more information.

Low harmonic, wall-mounted drives - ACS800-31
380, 400 or 415 V, 3-phase supply voltage. The power ratings are valid at nominal voltage (400 V)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No-overload use</th>
<th>Light overload</th>
<th>Heavy-duty use</th>
<th>Max output</th>
<th>Frame</th>
<th>Fuse A</th>
<th>Heat dissipation</th>
<th>Cooling requirements</th>
<th>Type (+E200 to order the EMC filter)</th>
<th>IP21 price with keypad</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pcont. max kW</td>
<td>kont. max A</td>
<td>Pg kW</td>
<td>N A</td>
<td>Phd kW</td>
<td>Ind A</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>†Type gG W</td>
<td>m³/h</td>
<td>ACS800-31-0016-3 £4,873</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15 34 35 32 11 26 52 R5 40 550 350</td>
<td>18.5 38 36 15 34 61 R5 50 655 350</td>
<td>22 47 22 45 18.5 38 68 R5 65 760 350</td>
<td>30 59 36 22 45 90 R5 80 1000 350</td>
<td>37 72 37 59 18.5 38 68 R5 100 1450 350</td>
<td>45 86 45 59 137 R5 125 1750 405</td>
<td>55 120 55 114 45 88 168 R6 150 2350 405</td>
<td>75 150 75 143 55 117 234 R6 160 2800 405</td>
<td>90 165 75 157 75 132 264 R6 200 2800 405</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Other ratings and voltage ranges available, 230 V, 500 V, 690 V. Price on application.
Price includes 2nd environment EMC filter and control panel
Prices for low harmonic cabinet drives ACS800-37 available on application
† For fuse selection, refer to the hardware manual. Weak networks may require aR fuses
Low voltage AC drives
ABB industrial drive - other variants

ACS800 & ACS880 – Dimensions and options

### Dimensions and weights, ACS800-31

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Frame size</th>
<th>H (mm)</th>
<th>W (mm)</th>
<th>D (mm)</th>
<th>Weight (Kg)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>R5</td>
<td>816</td>
<td>265</td>
<td>390</td>
<td>62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R6</td>
<td>970</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>440</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Height includes cable box, one enclosure, no external items

### Options for ACS800-31, wall-mounted
- UK gland box to accommodate SWA cable
- Different levels of EMC compliance
- SIL2 safe torque-off interface (unit mounts outside the drive)
- Coated boards standard
- Extended warranty
- Marine certification mounts and kits

### Options for ACS800-37, cabinet-built

Being a cabinet drive, all of the options available for ACS800-31 are valid as they fit inside the cabinet.

Additionally, the cabinet drive can be fitted with:
- IP21, IP22, IP42, IP54, IP54R variants (no IP55)
- Emergency stop variants
- Motor thermistor relays
- ATEX-approved motor protection
- Marine construction
- UL-approved components
- Various types of cable markings, cabinet heaters, door furniture and lighting etc.
- Sine filter fitted to output (for older motors)
- Top or bottom cable entry for either motor or power cables
- UK gland plates for SWA cables
- 110 V control inside the cabinet
- ABB can accommodate any specialised option or feature, by using its in-house application design team
- SIL2/PL d safe torque-off interface
- Coated boards

### ACS880-37 cabinet-built options and user interfaces

The ACS880-37 is part of the all compatible ACS880 range. It follows the same build format and options as the ACS880-07 (see page 63) and has the same ACS880 user interfaces (see page 65)

### User interfaces

All ACS800s use the same common options and user interfaces, these are detailed on page 71.
- The drive has two slots for I/O and fieldbus expansion and one slot for an optical interface (an additional mother board can also be added – giving three more slots)
- I/O modules can be chosen from analogue expansion, digital expansion, encoder and resolver feedback options
- Fieldbus modules are always fixed to slot one, and all of the major industrial fieldbus modules are available
- The drive can be ordered with specially designed application specific software variants. There are 11 variants available including crane, master follower, winder control, etc. The advantage of selecting these pre-written software variants is that they cover the market requirements. They are tested and certified by ABB and come complete with a User Manual and cabling instructions.
Low voltage AC drives
ABB industrial drive - other variants
ACS800 – Variants, ratings, types, voltages and prices

Regenerative, active rectifier drives
ACS 800-11, wall-mounted
- 5.5 kW to 110 kW (230 - 690 V)
- IP21 as standard
- Active rectifier unit
- Single package for easy cabinet installation, reducing installation time and cabinet space

ACS800-17 and ACS880-17, cabinet-built
- ACS800, 45 kW to 2500 kW (230 - 690 V)
- ACS880-17, 250 kW to 3200 kW
- IP21 as standard, IP22, IP42, IP54 and IP54 R available as options
- Wheel-out power modules for improved manual handling
- Plug-in power connectors for easy maintenance and redundancy
- Power module redundancy for improved availability
- Factory-built cabinets ensure good installation and compliance with standards
- ATEX approved PTC interfaces and blanket certification with ABB motors

Regenerative, active rectifier drive modules - low harmonic
ACS800-14
- 75 kW to 1700 kW (380 - 690 V)
- IP00 kits
- Assembly kits for Rittal cabinets and generic cabinets
- Separate controllers for galvanic isolation
- Requires a separate +24 V DC supply at 3 A
- Active supply unit can be configured for low harmonic mode (2-4 percent harmonic distortion) or regenerative mode, for better dynamic performance
- Comprehensive installation instructions and CAD drawings

Liquid cooled modules
ACS800-x04LC
- Extremely compact size, compared to air-cooled
- 98 percent of drive losses transferred to liquid - removes the need for air-conditioned control rooms
- Tested electrical/mechanical kits available - which make different solutions easy to build
- ACAD, PDF and full 3D 6PLAN® modelling support
- Pre-designed mounting frames available to reduce design time
- Liquid / liquid-heat exchanger assemblies can be supplied by ABB
- Module features:
  - Diode supply modules include line side chokes
  - Inverter modules include du/dt filters
  - Easy structure, fewer components
  - Inverter units, IGBT supply units and dynamic braking units are based on one common R8i module
Low voltage AC drives
ABB industrial drive - other variants
ACS800 - Variants, ratings, types, voltages and prices

Liquid-cooled drives
ACS800 - 17LC and ACS800 - 37LC
- 37 kW to 2700 kW, (380-690 V)
- IP42 as standard, IP54 as option
- ACS800-17LC, fully regenerative,
  ACS800-37LC, low harmonic
- Provides reliable operation in adverse conditions
- Silent and safe operation without the need for air ventilation or
  air conditioning, fully enclosed cabinets, smaller than previous
  generation
- Extensive range of cabinet options, including water pumping
  and heat exchanger cabinets
- Marine enclosure available
- Parallel modules allow redundant configuration
- Ideal where space is limited, in harsh environments, or at sites
  that require quieter operation, in applications where cooling
  water is freely available
- IEC, UL, CSA, Lloyds, DNV, ABS approvals
- ATEX-approved PTC interfaces and blanket certification with
  ABB motors

For further information see Technical Catalogue 3AFE88375126
Low voltage AC drives
Other variants
ACS800 – Common user interfaces

Control panel
The control panel features a full-text multilingual display. Dedicated keys allow fast access to actual signals, parameters, assistant functions and drive information. The panel can be used for parameter copying and for configuring adaptive programmes, working as a PLC inside the drive. Local motor control and parameter copying is also possible.

Panel mounting kits
Kits are available that allow mounting on the cabinet door, or in a holder inside the cabinet. The panel can be screwed to the cabinet door, without the need for an additional holder.

Fieldbus
The ACS800 supports an extensive list of fieldbus modules for connectivity to industrial networks.

I/O expansion
ACS800 can be fitted with a large range of analogue and digital I/O modules to expand its I/O capability.

DriveWindow - PC Tool
DriveWindow is a high specification, high speed commissioning, maintenance and monitoring tool for the ACS800 drive range. It operates over an optical fibre link. (Drive requires an RCDO module)

DriveAP - PC Tool
DriveAP allows access to the ACS800 adaptive, block programming environment.

Typical I/O and control connections
The ABB industrial drive family uses the same control card, keypad and software structure throughout its entire range. Analogue and digital I/O channels are used for different functions such as control, monitoring and measurement purposes (e.g. motor temperature). In addition, optional I/O extension modules are available providing additional analogue or digital I/O connections.

Below are the standard drive control I/O of the ABB industrial drive with factory macro. For other ACS800 application macros the functions may be different. Please refer to the firmware manual for details.

Reference voltage -10 VDC, RL > 1 kohm
Reference voltage 10 VDC, RL > 1 kohm
Speed reference 0(2) ... 10 V, Rin > 200 kohm
By default, not in use. 0(4) ... 20 mA, Rin = 100 ohm
By default, not in use. 0(4) ... 20 mA, Rin = 100 ohm
Motor speed 0(4)...20 mA = 0...motor nom. speed, RL < 700 ohm
Output current 0(4)...20 mA = 0...motor nom. current, RL < 700 ohm
Stop/Start
Forward/Reverse
By default, not in use.
Acceleration & deceleration select
Constant speed select
Constant speed select
+24 V DC max. 100 mA
Digital ground
Digital ground
Start interlock (0 = stop)
Power supply
Auxiliary power supply output, non-isolated, 24 V DC 250 mA
Relay output 1: ready
Relay output 2: running
Relay output 3: fault (-1)
Other drives, accessories and services

Servo drives 74
Motion controllers 75
ABB machinery drives 76
Medium voltage AC drives 77
DC drives 78
Power quality filters (PQFs) 79
Remote monitoring and support options 80
Software tools 81
Reliability Assessment, service and training 83
Other drives, accessories and services
Servo drives
Analogue, PTO, PowerLink and EtherCAT® options

**MicroFlex Analogue**
- Compact motion control drive for single- and three-phase operation
- ±10 V analogue speed / torque demand or pulse + direction inputs
- Choice of resolver feedback or incremental encoder / SSI
- Pulse train control inputs compatible to pulse train output (PTO) module FM562 for AC500 and AC500-eCo
- 1 or 3-phase operation 105...250 V AC

**MicroFlex e100**
- Compact motion control drive for single and three-phase operation
- Ethernet PowerLink technology for real-time motion control
- MINT programming for multitasking control of communications, logic, motion and HMI interaction in simple motion applications
- 1 or 3-phase operation 105...250 V AC
- 3, 6 and 9 A rms

**MicroFlex e150**
- Compact motion control drive with embedded safety for single and three-phase operation
- Embedded Ethernet including EtherCAT real-time, EtherNet/IP, and ModbusTCP
- Advanced MINT programming for multitasking control of communications, logic, motion and HMI interaction in high performance motion applications
- 1 or 3-phase operation 105...250 V AC
- 3, 6 and 9 A rms
- IP20 enclosure for cabinet installation (UL open)

**MotiFlex e180**
- EtherCAT®, Modbus/TCP, EtherNet/IP and PowerLink
- DSL combined motor power and feedback in one cable
- Advanced MINT programming for multitasking control of communications, logic, motion and HMI interaction in high performance motion applications
- Three-phase operation 200...480 V AC
- 3.0...55 A rms in four frame sizes
- IP20 enclosure for cabinet installation (UL open)
- Suitable for single drive and multi axis systems

**Options**
- 3, 6 and 9 A rms
- IP20 enclosure for cabinet installation (UL open)
- Auto-tuning and anti-resonance digital filters
- Suitable for single drive and multi axis systems
- Controls rotary and linear AC servo motors

**MicroFlex e100 servo drives**
- Space saving footprint EMC filter
- Brake units
For further information, see flyer “ABB motion control drives, MicroFlex brushless AC servo drives”, code: 3AUA0000123110 EN.

**MicroFlex e150 servo drives**
- Space saving footprint EMC filter
- Brake units
For further information, see flyer “ABB motion control products, MicroFlex e100 servo drives”, code: 3AUA0000116018 EN.

**MotiFlex e180 servodrives**
- Suitable for single drive and multi axis systems
- Controls rotary and linear AC servo motors
- Safe Torque-Off (STO) feature as standard

**Options**
- MINT Motion programming
- Space-saving footprint EMC filter
- Resolver adapter
- Dual encoder splitter
- Brake units
For further information, see flyer “ABB motion control products, MicroFlex e100 servo drives”, code: 3AUA0000097609 EN.

**MotiFlex e180 servo drives**
- Controls rotary and linear AC servo motors
- Safe Torque-Off as standard
- Memory unit for firmware, settings and functionality level

**Options**
- Drive functionality levels (single axis MINT motion)
- Feedback options, resolver, encoder, serial encoders or DSL One cable technology
- Filters, brake resistors and chokes
For further information, see flyer “ABB motion control products, MotiFlex e180 servo drives”, code: 3AUA0000168682.
Other drives, accessories and services
Motion controllers
MINT programmable, analogue, PTO, CANopen and PowerLink

NextMove ESB-2
- Compact panel mount motion controller
- Up to 8 axis of coordinated motion
- Stepper and analogue axis control
- CANopen manager for system expansion
- MINT programming for multitasking control of communications, logic, motion and HMI interaction in simple motion applications
- 4 x PTO (stepper) axis
- 3 or 4 x analogue controlled axis with encoder feedback
- Digital and analogue I/O including 4 x high speed registration latches
- Economical and simple to install

Options
- RS232 or RS485 serial option
- Differential/single-ended stepper interfaces
- 7 axis or 8 axis variants

NextMove e100 (Ethernet PowerLink, Modbus® TCP and Modbus RTU)
- Compact, high performance motion controller
- Real-time Ethernet PowerLink and Modbus® TCP/IP
- 8 or 16 axis of interpolated motion
- (16 MN + 14 CN) profiled axis = max. 30 Powerlink axis
- 4 stepper axis/3 analogue axis

Options
- USB, serial and CANopen® provide flexible communications to PLC, distributed I/O and other devices
- Firmware variant allows the controller to operate as a CANopen® DS402 master and control up to 64 axis

Options
- RS232 or RS485 serial option
- Differential/single-ended stepper interfaces
- 7 axis or 8 axis variants

Number of axis | Serial port | Order code | Single ended stepper
---|---|---|---
7 | RS232 / USB | NSB202-501W | NSB203-501W
7 | RS485 / USB | NSB202-502W | NSB203-502W
8 | RS232 / USB | NSB204-501W | NSB205-501W
8 | RS485 / USB | NSB204-552W | NSB205-552W

Number of axis | Order code | Single ended stepper
---|---|---
8 | NXE100-1608DBW | NXE100-1608SBW (1)
16 | NXE100-1616DBW | NXE100-1616SBW (1)

(1) For use with DSMS stepper/driver.
Other drives, accessories and services

ABB machinery drives

ABB machinery drives are designed to suit the needs of OEMs with reasonably complex machinery requirements. The range integrates with the ABB servo drive range, allowing capable and suitably priced drive packages for machinery applications. The range has scalable safety, by way of STO to SIL 3 (PL e) as standard with FSO available on the ACS880. ABB machinery drives feature sequence programming, adaptive programming or IEC 61131 (CODESYS) programming. The drives can be customised for OEMs down to parameter visibility levels to protect the set-up.

ACS380
- 0.25 kW to 3.0 kW (240 V), 0.37 kW to 11 kW (400 V), wider range by end 2017
- Part of the “all compatible” family
- Same PC tool, keypad and fieldbuses as the other ranges
- Basic and demanding constant torque applications, including brake control
- IP20 optimised for cabinet mounting, built-in keypad
- Highly compact drives with enhanced cooling design
- Built-in Modbus, EMC C2, STO to SIL 3, robust motor control
- Control induction, permanent magnet and SynRM motors
- Two variants, one containing traditional I/O, the other pre-configured for a fieldbus
- Contains sequence programming and adaptive programming. Each sequence is freely programmable

ACS880-M04
- 0.37 kW to 18.5 kW (240 V), 0.75 kW to 45 kW (400 V)
- Part of the “all compatible” family, and based on the ACS880 control program
- Same PC tool, keypad and fieldbuses as the other ranges
- More demanding constant torque applications, industrial positioning
- IP20 optimised for cabinet mounting
- Built-in Modbus, EMC C2, DTC motor control
- Control induction, PM and SynRM motors
- STO to SIL 3 as standard. Extended machinery safety with FSO module
- Memory module contains all of the settings, zero re-commissioning
- Extensive range of feedback interfaces
- Contains adaptive programming and fulfils IEC 61131 (CODESYS) programming
Other drives, accessories and services
Medium voltage AC drives

ABB offers a complete range of medium voltage AC drives for speed and torque control and for the starting of large AC motors. The drives feature an arc-resistant design that protects workforce and goods from electric arcs. Certified functional safety features and an integrated DC grounding switch ensure safety and reliability.

**ACS580MV**
- General purpose drive from 200 kW to 6.3 MW
- Air-cooled with integrated input transformer
- Output voltage 6 kV to 11 kV
- New generation of cascaded h-bridge topology allows the use of standard motors
- Optimal network friendliness due to 30-54 pulse configuration

**ACS1000i**
- Single drives 315 kW to 2 MW
- Output voltage 2.3 kV to 4.16 kV
- Air-cooled, 24-pulse drive with integrated input transformer
- Retrofit-ready for existing motors, suitable for most MV applications
- Integrated output sine filter for pure sinusoidal voltage and current output
- Offshore cabinet versions available

**ACS1000**
- Single drives from 315 kW to 5 MW
- Output voltage 2.3 kV to 4.16 kV
- Air-cooled (315 kW to 2 MW) and water-cooled (2 MW to 5 MW) versions
- Retrofit-ready for existing motors, suitable for most MV applications
- Integrated output sine filter for pure sinusoidal voltage and current output
- Offshore cabinet versions available

**ACS2000**
- Single drives, air-cooled from 250 kW to 3.2 MW
- Output voltage 4.16 kV to 6.9 kV
- Active rectifier unit or 24-pulse diode front end for minimal line side harmonics
- Regeneration and power factor correction with active rectifier
- Direct-to-line versions for operation without an input transformer
- Optional integrated input transformer
- Multilevel topology allows the use of standard motors
- Simple drive system integration
- Modular power modules for reduced MTTR
- Sine filter output optional, for retrofit and long cable run applications
Other drives, accessories and services
Medium voltage AC drives and low voltage DC drives

Medium voltage drives cont...

ACS5000
- Single drives from 2 MW to 36 MW
- Air-cooled (2 MW to 7 MW) and water-cooled (5 MW to 36 MW) versions
- Air-cooled version with integrated input transformer (2 MW to 6 MW)
- Output voltage 6 kV to 13.8 kV
- Multilevel topology allows the use of standard motors
- Multilevel fuseless topology results in a drive with unbeatable efficiency, reliability and footprint
- Optimal network friendliness due to 36-pulse configuration

ACS6000
- Single or multidrives, water-cooled 5 MW to 36 MW
- Output voltage 2.3 kV to 3.3 kV
- Active rectifier unit available for 4-quadrant operation, reduced harmonics and adjustable power factor
- Line supply unit available for 2-quadrant operation and a constant power factor of 0.96 across entire speed range
- Modular design for optimum configurations, including multidrive and redundant configurations
- Offshore cabinet versions available

MEGADRIVE LCI
- 2 MW to 72 MW (higher power on request)
- High power with series connection of thyristors
- N+1 thyristor redundancy possible
- Fuseless design
- Water- and air-cooled converters available
- Line side harmonics: 6-pulse, 12-pulse or 24-pulse
- Motor side harmonics: 6-pulse or 12-pulse
- High converter efficiency
- Proven technology and design
- Complete package solutions including transformers, drives and motors

ABB general purpose DC drives
DCS550
- A digital DC drive targeted at OEMs, such as machine builders
- Range from 20 to 1000 A DC
- 230 V AC - 525 V AC
- Start-up assistants and commissioning wizards
- Extensive range of fieldbus interfaces
- Adaptive program for additional flexibility
- Onboard field controller
Other drives, accessories and services
Low voltage DC drives and power quality filters (PQF)

ABB industrial DC drives and DC heaters
DCS800, DCT880
- From 25 to 5200 A
- Commissioning wizard gives easy start-up
- Easy to use - standard macros or user programmability
- Intuitive control panel with ‘Help’ key, consistent with many of the AC drives
- Adaptive programming for additional flexibility
- Modules can be connected in parallel up to 20,000 A
- Uses ACS800 I/O option modules and fieldbus modules
- I/O is backward compatible with DCS500 and DCS600
- Field converters built-in (up to 25 A)
- The drive can be ordered as an electrical heater control, the DCT880, ideal for all industrial heating

Power quality filters - overview
- Actively eliminates harmonics in a controlled way
- Filters up to 50th harmonic in accordance with G5/4 requirements. Each harmonic individually programmable
- Redundancy feature allows units to continue when others have shut down
- Active filters - only work when harmonics are present thereby reducing unwanted losses, resulting in greater overall efficiency
- Close loop for better measurement of harmonics - thereby more accurately eliminating the potentially damaging harmonic
- Auto-detection of CT polarity - ensures accurate current distortion readings on network, resulting in easy commissioning
- Stores record trail. Fault and event log - any trip will have a record trail

PQFM, PQFI
- Available in IP00 back plate or IP21, IP42 cabinets
- New intuitive user interface
- Current ratings, 70 A, 100 A, 130 A, 150 A, 250 A, 450 A, per module. The modules can be connected in parallel to a maximum of eight modules of equal rating

POFs
- Small compact unit suitable for wall mounting
- Low ratings available from 30 A, 45 A, 60 A, 70 A, 80 A, 90 A, 100 A, 120 A. The modules can be connected in parallel to a maximum of four modules of equal rating
- Same user interface as the larger units
- Available in IP30
Remote monitoring overview
Remote monitoring is the reporting of information back to the user, from a remote station or location. Typical remote monitoring information can include:
- Energy consumption and savings
- Motor condition
- Warnings (predictive maintenance), faults and alarms
- Diagnostics
- Monitoring actual values and parameters
- Parameter access is possible, but is not the primary function of remote monitoring

Ethernet adapter for ABB industrial drives
NETA-21
NETA-21 module provides remote access for ABB drives and connected devices. The module connects to the drive via several different connection possibilities:
- 2 x panel ports (32 drives per port)
- Optical connection (10 drives)
- Ethernet connection (32 drives)
- RS485 Modbus (32 devices)
It can send process data, data logs and event messages independently, without a PLC or a dedicated on-site computer. The module can send either e-mails or SMS text messages to inform the user of the status of the drive(s) connected to it. It has an internal web server for easy configuration and drive access.

High speed drive monitoring – remote diagnostics
DriveMonitor
DriveMonitor is a service tool which can be fitted to any ABB industrial drive in case of site problems and issues. It uses high speed optical connections to the drives power stages and monitors all of the switching signals sent. In this way complicated system problems can be diagnosed. DriveMonitor can also be used as a system optimisation and recording tool, as its memory buffers can save up to one years worth of performance data.

Monitoring Drives over “1-Wire” networks
Drive Composer Pro
Drive Composer Pro is able to communicate to the all compatible drives range over existing ethernet fieldbus networks. This ability to use existing control networks for drive communication is known as “1 wire” tools networks, and clearly reduces installation costs as only 1 communications network is required.

Ethernet adapters
The ABB range of drives can be fitted with Ethernet adapters which allow them to communicate on Ethernet networks. The FENA-21 is two-port so removes the need for a switch. Once on a company network the drive can be monitored from anywhere within that company, or if firewall allow, from anywhere on earth. The FENA-21 also contains a web environment.

DDriveTune wireless App
Drivetune is the smart mobile app enabling wireless communication to ABB low voltage drives. The drive needs to have the Bluetooth enabled keypad fitted. You will be able to start-up your drive and commission with your phone using simple settings and widgets. The appealing dashboard shows intuitively drive status, performance and configuration.

Bring Your Own Device
No need to learn another device. ABB’s DriveTune app will work on your smartphone or tablet.
Cut the cord.
Access the drive without the cord with Bluetooth enabled keypad.
Lose the Ladder
Users won’t need to access difficult-to-reach work areas to access information necessary to help them commission and tune a drive.
Skip the steps
The drive will register within 75m (246ft) of the smartphones or tablet.
Protect your personnel.
Users won’t need to enter hazardous areas to access information necessary to help them commission and tune a drive.

Other drives, accessories and services

Software tools

ABB offers several software tools to facilitate and enhance the use of ABB drives. These tools provide a user-friendly and easy-to-use approach for the selection, commissioning and use of AC drives.

Integration and programming tools

Drive Composer

The Drive Composer PC tool offers fast and harmonised set-up, commissioning and monitoring for the new ABB all compatible drive portfolio. The tool has two variants, a free version called Drive Composer Entry and a professional level tool which is licensed called Drive Composer Pro. The free version of the tool provides start-up and maintenance programming with monitoring and parameter editing, while the professional version provides additional features such as custom parameter windows, control diagrams for easy parameter editing of the drive’s configuration and the ability to programme the built-in safety module. Drive Composer has add-ons for adaptive programming and enables CODESYS programming for more complicated system designs. CODESYS requires Automation Builder.

Drive Composer Pro includes a programming environment called adaptive programming. This allows reasonably complex programs to be generated within the all compatible drives. The drives contain adaptive programming for free, you only need the tool to access it. Adaptive programming allows logic or mathematics to be performed to enhance the parameter set, using a range of logic functions or arithmetic function blocks. Inside some of the drives the environment is further enhanced by the addition of sequence programming, where the program can be organised into steps that are triggered by certain events. Adaptive programming allows the drive to take the place of relays and PLCs around the drive, removing cost from the project. If adaptive programming is not sufficient, then upgrade to the CODESYS environment using Automation Builder in the drives that support it.

DriveManager for SIMATIC

Drive Manager for SIMATIC (DM4S-01) is a plug-in device tool that can be easily installed into the STEP 7 and TIA Portal. It utilises the TCI interface of the SIMATIC PLC to communicate with the drives connected to PROFIBUS or PROFINET network. Drive Manager for SIMATIC offers features for the setup of ABB low voltage drives used with SIMATIC S7 PLCs.

Automation Builder

Automation Builder is an integrated software suite for machine builders and system integrators wanting to automate their machines and systems in an integrated and efficient way. Automation Builder is the successor of the PSS01 Control Builder Plus product, incorporating all PLC engineering functionality plus additional engineering features.

DriveWindow Light

Available for ACx550, ACS310, ACS355 and ACS800 drives it has the similar functions as DriveWindow but is designed for point-to-point communication, via control panel port.

Engineering tools

DriveSize

For dimensioning drives and motors this PC programme helps select an optimal motor, drive and transformer, which is especially useful where a straightforward selection from a catalogue is not possible. DriveSize is used to compute network harmonics and to create documents about dimensioning. It contains current versions of ABB’s motors and drives catalogues.

It can also be used in conjunction with ABB machinery drives to specify the dimensions of different kinds of linear or rotary movement mechanisms such as lead screws, rack and pinion combinations, belts and pulleys, conveyors, feed rolls and rotating tables.

DriveSize software can be used in Win98, WinNT, Win2000 and WinXP, Windows 7, Windows 8 operating systems.

DriveChopper

For dimensioning a braking chopper and resistor.

DriveChopper is a web tool for braking chopper and resistor dimensioning. The programme is created especially for system designers who need a braking unit for a particular drive application.
Other drives, accessories and services
Software tools

DriveUpgrade
For finding an adequate drive to replace an old one. This on-line tool is ideal for finding a replacement to an existing ABB drive that may be coming to the end of its useful life. Simply input some basic information and the modern equivalent drive will be revealed.

To download, go to: www.abb.com > drives > drive PC tools.

Energy saving tools
For comparison of energy consumption between different flow control methods in pumps and fans, ABB has developed calculation tools for estimating the energy savings that become available when applying electric speed control to certain flow machines. ABB has smartphone Apps to help also.

ABB have also upgraded their popular Fansave and Pumpsave tools to a more modern platform. Savings for Fans pumps and compressors can now be calculated in a graphical Environment, please visit: http://new.abb.com/drives/energy-efficiency/energysave-calculator where links to the Appstore and WEB based tools can be accessed.

AVP energy toolkit app
Energy, CO₂ and money saved, together with an estimated return on investment, are the outputs of an app designed to show the benefits of using variable-speed drives (VSDs) and electric motors to replace direct-on-line starting. The app produces an instant mini-report that contains details of a matched ABB motor-drive package and can be forwarded to one of ABB’s authorised value providers.

To download the app, visit the Apple App Store on your iPhone or iPad and search AVP energy toolkit.

Energy appraisal report web tool
This is a dedicated web tool to allow ABB’s authorised value provider to generate energy appraisal reports, helps to save energy on applications.
In the UK, it is estimated that over 80 percent of installed variable-speed drives are not maintained. The Reliability Assessment service helps to highlight this issue by preparing a report at a given site, which shows life cycle phase, maintenance history and recommended maintenance schedule.

**Total cost of ownership**

Consider this:

Cost of ownership = Purchase + Cost of running + Cost of not running

The main challenge facing every motor-driven application is how to minimise the cost of not running. While rapid response to failures is one approach, it would be much easier if the risk of failure was minimised in the first place.

This is where Reliability Assessment service steps in. The cost of maintenance is always less than the cost of failure; therefore a structured maintenance/ replacement scheme drives down the total cost of ownership.

**Reliability Assessment**

Maximising profit means that every part of your process is running uninterrupted, without surprises. Predictability saves time, cuts costs and ultimately, keeps your business effective.

With the Reliability Assessment service, you can combine the drives maintenance status with its criticality to the process or application. This provides the know-how to determine exactly where your process stands, now and in the future.

Reliability Assessments work by highlighting the most critical drives so clear priorities for maintenance are set. Service budgeting is optimised as the total plant’s maintenance actions can be planned in advance. As a result, fewer unexpected interruptions occur. The ultimate aim: to always maximise reliability of the ABB drives installed base at a site and to manage the entire lifecycle, reducing downtime and production losses.

Taking ownership via some long term planning of maintenance and replacement through Reliability Assessments reduces total cost of ownership since cost of not running is minimised via maximising uptime.

Reliability Assessments are suitable for all drives, no matter what make or stage in their life cycle.

**How it works**

**Drive registration**

Before any assessments can be done, every drive needs to be registered. During registration, the drive criticality can also be defined and customer identification and application data will be entered.

**Getting started**

ABB collects and prepares all applicable data on your drives, along with detailed service history and environment of the installation. Together with the insight of on-site professionals, we gather all the crucial data about your technical infrastructure.

**Focusing on the detail**

Details of each drive are analysed including age, location, business impact, effects of operating environment, service history, as well as all additional third party servicing and part replacements.

**Analysing your maintenance plant**

The Reliability Assessment service now combines the variables of each drive to paint a comprehensive picture of your entire technical infrastructure that allows you to define and review your maintenance plan.

**Getting to know your facts**

Finally, ABB provides you with an in-depth report that examines the current and future state of your factory or plant. Getting detailed information helps you plan future investments and maintenance better, with the related schedules, budgeting and execution. It also lets you tackle any imminent future defects in time.

**ABB University - Professional drives training**

Factory certified courses delivered in a bespoke drives training facility by experienced applications and service personnel. With ABB University you can enrol onto either e-learning or classroom based courses. Please call 01785 285939 or visit www.abb.co.uk/abbuniversity
## AC motors

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Low voltage AC motors - Sizings and ratings</td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>European MEPS for low voltage motors</td>
<td>88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EU 4/2014 - main changes and exclusions</td>
<td>89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Process performance motors</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>General performance motors</td>
<td>94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Explosive atmospheres</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flameproof motors</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional extras for low voltage AC motors</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NEMA motors</td>
<td>102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Central motor stock, Menden, Germany</td>
<td>103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High voltage AC motor range</td>
<td>104</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Low voltage AC motors

### Sizes and ratings

#### Sizes 56-450

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Size</th>
<th>56</th>
<th>63</th>
<th>71</th>
<th>80</th>
<th>90</th>
<th>100</th>
<th>112</th>
<th>132</th>
<th>160</th>
<th>180</th>
<th>200</th>
<th>225</th>
<th>250</th>
<th>280</th>
<th>315</th>
<th>355</th>
<th>400</th>
<th>450</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### General performance motors - page 95

- **IE2 aluminum motors**
- **IE2 cast iron motors**
- **IE3 cast iron motors**

#### Process performance motors - page 92

- **IE2 aluminum motors**
- **IE3 aluminum motors**
- **IE2 cast iron motors**
- **IE3 cast iron motors**
- **IE4 cast iron motors**

#### Motors for hazardous areas - page 98

- **IE2 flameproof motor**
- **IE3 flameproof motor**
- **IE2 non-sparking motors**
- **IE3 non-sparking motors**
- **IE2 dust ignition protection motors**
- **IE3 dust ignition protection motors**
- **Increased safety motors**

#### Marine motors

- **Process performance motors (aluminium)**
- **Process performance motors (cast iron)**
- **General performance motors (aluminium, cast iron)**

#### Motors for other applications

- **Brake motors**
- **High ambient motors**
- **Smoke venting motors**
- **Single phase motors**
- **Roller table motors**
- **Water-cooled motors**
- **Permanent magnet motors**
- **Wind turbine generators**
- **High dynamic performance motors (HDP)**
- **Synchronous reluctance motors (SynRM)**
AC motors
European Minimum Energy Performance Standards (EU MEPS)

2014
Regulation
EU 4/2014 introduced

2009
EuP Directive
2005/32/EC
Eco-design formally adopted
EC 640/2009

Mandatory EuP Directive
Applies to motors:
- rated voltage up to 1000 V
- single-speed, three-phase, 50 Hz
- 2, 4 and 6-pole
- rated output from 0.75 kW - 375 kW
- S1 Duty

Does not apply to motors designed to operate exclusively:
- in potentially explosive atmospheres as defined in ATEX directive 94/9/EC
- brake motors
- ambient air temperature outside the range -30°C to +60°C
- altitudes exceeding 4000m asl
- maximum operating air temperature above 400°C

Implementation timetable

Phase 1
From 16 June, 2012
Motors must meet the IE2 efficiency level

Phase 2
From 1 January, 2015
Motors with a rated output of 7.5 kW - 375 kW must meet
EITHER the IE3 efficiency level OR the IE2 level if fitted
with variable-speed drive

Phase 3
From 1 January, 2017
Motors with a rated output of 0.75 kW - 375 kW must meet
EITHER the IE3 efficiency level OR the IE2 level if fitted
with variable-speed drive

2008
IEC 60034-30

Standard for LV motor efficiency classes
Motors covered by standard include:
- Single-speed, three-phase, 50 and 60 Hz
- 2, 4 or 6-pole
- Rated output from 0.75 kW - 375 kW
- Rated voltage U_N up to 1000 V
- Duty type S1 (continuous duty), or S3 (intermittent periodic duty) with a rated cyclic duration factor of
80 percent or higher
- Capable of operating direct online
50 and 60 Hz

Super premium efficiency
IE4
Not yet defined

Premium efficiency
IE3
Premium

High efficiency
IE2
Comparable to Eff1

Standard efficiency
IE1
Comparable to Eff2

2007
IEC 60034-2-1

Standard on efficiency measurement methods
Introduces new rules concerning the testing methods
to be used for determining losses and efficiency.

The resulting efficiency values differ from those
obtained under the previous IEC testing standard IEC 60034-2: 1996

ABB calculates efficiency values
according to the indirect method, with
additional losses determined from
measurement. This is the preferred low
uncertainty method outlined in
the standard.
AC motors
EU 4/2014 - main changes and exclusions

The amending regulation came into force in mid-2014 and was intended to close loopholes in the original regulation. The amendment was issued after it became clear that certain manufacturers were intentionally contravening the spirit of EU MEPS.

The amendment did not change the scope of EU MEPS, but instead clarified the original spirit of Regulation EC 640. The main changes are shown below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Original Regulation EC 640/2009</th>
<th>Amending Regulation EU 4/2014</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>EU MEPS covers 2-, 4- and 6-pole single speed, three-phase induction motors in a power range of 0.75 kW - 375 kW rated up to 1000 V. It covers all duty types as long as the motors are capable of continuous duty operation.</td>
<td>The amending regulation excluded the following motors from the scope of EU MEPS:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The original Regulation excluded the following motors from the scope of EU MEPS:</td>
<td>motors designed to operate wholly immersed in a liquid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>motors designed to operate wholly immersed in a liquid</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>motors completely integrated into a product where the motor’s energy performance cannot be tested independently from the product</td>
<td>no change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>motors specifically designed to operate continuously:</td>
<td>change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at altitudes exceeding 1000 meters ASL</td>
<td>4000 m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>outside the ambient air temperature range of -15°C ... +40°C</td>
<td>-30°C ... +60°C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>where ambient air temperatures are less than -15 °C for any motor or less than 0 °C for a motor with air cooling</td>
<td>water cooling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in maximum operating temperatures above 400°C</td>
<td>no change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>where the water coolant temperature at the inlet to a product is less than 5°C or exceeds 25°C</td>
<td>0°C ... 32°C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in potentially explosive atmospheres as defined in Directive 94/9/EC</td>
<td>no change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brake motors</td>
<td>no change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Requirements for markings on motor rating plates:</td>
<td>manufacturers must mark efficiency at 100%, 75% and 50% of rated load</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Low voltage AC motors
Process performance motors

What is a process performance motor?
Process performance motors are the flagship of ABB’s standard low voltage motors. This range provides the most comprehensive, versatile set of motors for the process industries and heavy-duty applications which are dependent on continuous reliability, lowest possible environmental impact and life cycle costs. Their superior ability to perform reliably and efficiently, continuously and even under the most challenging circumstances, ensures that they power their way through the toughest tasks and conditions.

Where can it be used?
– End-users in continuous process industries
– Project OEMs
– Demanding industries:
  - pulp and paper
  - metals
  - minerals and mining

Highlights
– All variant codes possible for process industry
– Application knowledge and engineering
– With three years warranty and option to extend to five years
– IE3 and IE4
### Process performance cast iron motors

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Output kW</th>
<th>Torque Nm</th>
<th>Current A</th>
<th>Eff*</th>
<th>Frame size</th>
<th>Foot price</th>
<th>Flange price</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0.37</td>
<td>1.29</td>
<td>0.94</td>
<td>73.8</td>
<td>M3BP 71MC 2</td>
<td>£269</td>
<td>£308</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.55</td>
<td>1.91</td>
<td>1.25</td>
<td>77.8</td>
<td>M3BP 71ME 2</td>
<td>£292</td>
<td>£338</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.75</td>
<td>2.5</td>
<td>1.6</td>
<td>80.7</td>
<td>M3BP 80MC 2</td>
<td>£402</td>
<td>£446</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1</td>
<td>3.7</td>
<td>2.3</td>
<td>82.7</td>
<td>M3BP 80ME 2</td>
<td>£422</td>
<td>£465</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>4.9</td>
<td>2.9</td>
<td>84.2</td>
<td>M3BP 92SLA 2</td>
<td>£444</td>
<td>£491</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2</td>
<td>7.2</td>
<td>4.2</td>
<td>85.9</td>
<td>M3BP 90LA 2</td>
<td>£552</td>
<td>£597</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>9.9</td>
<td>5.4</td>
<td>87.1</td>
<td>M3BP 100MLA 2</td>
<td>£649</td>
<td>£721</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.15</td>
<td>10.8</td>
<td>6.9</td>
<td>88.1</td>
<td>M3BP 112ME 2</td>
<td>£834</td>
<td>£938</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.5</td>
<td>18.1</td>
<td>9.8</td>
<td>89.2</td>
<td>M3BP 132SMC 2</td>
<td>£1,010</td>
<td>£1,094</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.5</td>
<td>24.6</td>
<td>13.3</td>
<td>90.1</td>
<td>M3BP 132SMX 2</td>
<td>£1,218</td>
<td>£1,329</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.3</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>18.7</td>
<td>92</td>
<td>M3BP 160MLA 2</td>
<td>£1,349</td>
<td>£1,466</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.5</td>
<td>49</td>
<td>25.4</td>
<td>92.5</td>
<td>M3BP 160MLB 2</td>
<td>£1,603</td>
<td>£1,748</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.5</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>30.8</td>
<td>93.1</td>
<td>M3BP 160MLC 2</td>
<td>£1,957</td>
<td>£2,065</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.7</td>
<td>71</td>
<td>37.4</td>
<td>93.2</td>
<td>M3BP 180MLA 2</td>
<td>£2,363</td>
<td>£2,472</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.5</td>
<td>97</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>94.2</td>
<td>M3BP 200MLA 2</td>
<td>£3,033</td>
<td>£3,160</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.7</td>
<td>119</td>
<td>61.9</td>
<td>94.7</td>
<td>M3BP 200MLB 2</td>
<td>£4,416</td>
<td>£4,597</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.5</td>
<td>145</td>
<td>78.8</td>
<td>94.9</td>
<td>M3BP 225SMA 2</td>
<td>£5,590</td>
<td>£5,787</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.5</td>
<td>177</td>
<td>93.6</td>
<td>95.2</td>
<td>M3BP 250SMA 2</td>
<td>£6,630</td>
<td>£6,849</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.5</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>102.9</td>
<td>95.5</td>
<td>M3BP 280SMA 2</td>
<td>£8,395</td>
<td>£8,786</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.5</td>
<td>228</td>
<td>155.7</td>
<td>95.7</td>
<td>M3BP 315SMA 2</td>
<td>£9,557</td>
<td>£9,849</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>315</td>
<td>355</td>
<td>189.9</td>
<td>95.9</td>
<td>M3BP 315SMC 2</td>
<td>£12,589</td>
<td>£13,002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>355</td>
<td>385</td>
<td>226.6</td>
<td>96.2</td>
<td>M3BP 315SMX 2</td>
<td>£15,905</td>
<td>£16,336</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>375</td>
<td>422</td>
<td>268.6</td>
<td>96.4</td>
<td>M3BP 355SMA 2</td>
<td>£22,142</td>
<td>£24,296</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>395</td>
<td>460</td>
<td>336.6</td>
<td>96.4</td>
<td>M3BP 355SMX 2</td>
<td>£28,018</td>
<td>£29,390</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>450</td>
<td>500</td>
<td>415.6</td>
<td>96.4</td>
<td>M3BP 400MLA 2</td>
<td>£30,028</td>
<td>£31,992</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>515</td>
<td>575</td>
<td>486.5</td>
<td>96.4</td>
<td>M3BP 450MLA 2</td>
<td>£32,566</td>
<td>£33,639</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>555</td>
<td>625</td>
<td>556.5</td>
<td>96.4</td>
<td>M3BP 500MLA 2</td>
<td>£35,775</td>
<td>£37,416</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Low voltage AC motors

**IE3 Low voltage motors, cast iron, IP55, IC 411, single-speed. 400 V 3-phase 50 Hz**

See product catalogues or [www.abb.com/motors&generators](http://www.abb.com/motors&generators) for more information on products.
Low voltage AC motors
Process performance aluminium motors
80-250, 2, 4 & 6 poles

TEFC low voltage motors, aluminium, IP55, IC 411, single-speed. 400 V 3-phase 50 Hz

See product catalogues or www.abb.com/motors&generators for more information on products.

### Low voltage AC motors
#### Process performance aluminium motors
80-250, 2, 4 & 6 poles

#### Output kW

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Output kW</th>
<th>Torque Nm</th>
<th>Current I</th>
<th>Eff*</th>
<th>Frame size</th>
<th>Foot price</th>
<th>Flange price</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0.75</td>
<td>2.5</td>
<td>1.7</td>
<td>80.7</td>
<td>M3AA 80B 2</td>
<td>£241</td>
<td>£278</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1</td>
<td>3.7</td>
<td>2.4</td>
<td>82.7</td>
<td>M3AA 80C 2</td>
<td>£266</td>
<td>£296</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>4.9</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>84.4</td>
<td>M3AA 90L 2</td>
<td>£311</td>
<td>£351</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2</td>
<td>7.2</td>
<td>4.7</td>
<td>85.9</td>
<td>M3AA 90LB 2</td>
<td>£394</td>
<td>£433</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>9.9</td>
<td>5.4</td>
<td>87.5</td>
<td>M3AA 100LB 2</td>
<td>£467</td>
<td>£513</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>12.9</td>
<td>7.2</td>
<td>88.5</td>
<td>M3AA 112MB 2</td>
<td>£555</td>
<td>£613</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.5</td>
<td>18.9</td>
<td>9.9</td>
<td>89.2</td>
<td>M3AA 132SB 2</td>
<td>£723</td>
<td>£796</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 3000 r/min = 2 poles

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Output kW</th>
<th>Torque Nm</th>
<th>Current I</th>
<th>Eff*</th>
<th>Frame size</th>
<th>Foot price</th>
<th>Flange price</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0.75</td>
<td>7.7</td>
<td>2.1</td>
<td>78.9</td>
<td>M3AA 90LB 6</td>
<td>£255</td>
<td>£281</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1</td>
<td>11.3</td>
<td>3.6</td>
<td>84.7</td>
<td>M3AA 100LC 6</td>
<td>£388</td>
<td>£412</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>14.9</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>84.3</td>
<td>M3AA 112MB 6</td>
<td>£555</td>
<td>£613</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>29.5</td>
<td>7.4</td>
<td>85.6</td>
<td>M3AA 132S 6</td>
<td>£693</td>
<td>£741</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>8.9</td>
<td>86.8</td>
<td>M3AA 132MA 6</td>
<td>£860</td>
<td>£903</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.5</td>
<td>54</td>
<td>13.3</td>
<td>88.5</td>
<td>M3AA 132MC 6</td>
<td>£1,065</td>
<td>£1,095</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.5</td>
<td>73</td>
<td>15.2</td>
<td>90.8</td>
<td>M3AA 160MLA 6</td>
<td>£1,446</td>
<td>£1,559</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>107</td>
<td>23.5</td>
<td>91.2</td>
<td>M3AA 160MLB 6</td>
<td>£1,969</td>
<td>£2,076</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>145</td>
<td>30.4</td>
<td>92.2</td>
<td>M3AA 180MLA 6</td>
<td>£2,461</td>
<td>£2,625</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.5</td>
<td>178</td>
<td>37.3</td>
<td>92.8</td>
<td>M3AA 225SMA 6</td>
<td>£3,953</td>
<td>£4,117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>212</td>
<td>43</td>
<td>93.3</td>
<td>M3AA 200MLA 6</td>
<td>£4,753</td>
<td>£5,117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>290</td>
<td>56.8</td>
<td>94.1</td>
<td>M3AA 225SMA 6</td>
<td>£6,976</td>
<td>£7,687</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37</td>
<td>357</td>
<td>68</td>
<td>94.4</td>
<td>M3AA 250SMA 6</td>
<td>£6,790</td>
<td>£7,400</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45</td>
<td>434</td>
<td>85.5</td>
<td>93.7</td>
<td>M3AA 280SMA 6</td>
<td>£7,596</td>
<td>£8,109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55</td>
<td>531</td>
<td>105</td>
<td>94.1</td>
<td>M3AA 280SMB 6</td>
<td>£8,765</td>
<td>£9,375</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 1500 r/min = 4 poles

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Output kW</th>
<th>Torque Nm</th>
<th>Current I</th>
<th>Eff*</th>
<th>Frame size</th>
<th>Foot price</th>
<th>Flange price</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0.75</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>1.9</td>
<td>82.5</td>
<td>M3AA 80ME 4</td>
<td>£250</td>
<td>£281</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1</td>
<td>7.3</td>
<td>2.5</td>
<td>84.1</td>
<td>M3AA 90LE 4</td>
<td>£287</td>
<td>£324</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>9.9</td>
<td>3.3</td>
<td>85.3</td>
<td>M3AA 90LD 4</td>
<td>£339</td>
<td>£385</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2</td>
<td>14.4</td>
<td>4.6</td>
<td>86.7</td>
<td>M3AA 100LC 4</td>
<td>£412</td>
<td>£458</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>19.8</td>
<td>5.9</td>
<td>87.9</td>
<td>M3AA 100LD 4</td>
<td>£491</td>
<td>£546</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>26.3</td>
<td>7.6</td>
<td>88.6</td>
<td>M3AA 112MB 4</td>
<td>£583</td>
<td>£638</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.5</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>89.6</td>
<td>M3AA 132M 4</td>
<td>£744</td>
<td>£815</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 1500 r/min = 6 poles

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Output kW</th>
<th>Torque Nm</th>
<th>Current I</th>
<th>Eff*</th>
<th>Frame size</th>
<th>Foot price</th>
<th>Flange price</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0.75</td>
<td>7.7</td>
<td>2.1</td>
<td>78.9</td>
<td>M3AA 90LB 6</td>
<td>£315</td>
<td>£345</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1</td>
<td>11.3</td>
<td>3.6</td>
<td>84.7</td>
<td>M3AA 100LC 6</td>
<td>£443</td>
<td>£485</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>14.9</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>84.3</td>
<td>M3AA 112MB 6</td>
<td>£555</td>
<td>£613</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>29.5</td>
<td>7.4</td>
<td>85.6</td>
<td>M3AA 132S 6</td>
<td>£693</td>
<td>£741</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>8.9</td>
<td>86.8</td>
<td>M3AA 132MA 6</td>
<td>£860</td>
<td>£903</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.5</td>
<td>54</td>
<td>13.3</td>
<td>88.5</td>
<td>M3AA 132MC 6</td>
<td>£1,065</td>
<td>£1,095</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.5</td>
<td>73</td>
<td>15.2</td>
<td>90.8</td>
<td>M3AA 160MLA 6</td>
<td>£1,446</td>
<td>£1,559</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>107</td>
<td>23.5</td>
<td>91.2</td>
<td>M3AA 160MLB 6</td>
<td>£1,969</td>
<td>£2,076</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>145</td>
<td>30.4</td>
<td>92.2</td>
<td>M3AA 180MLA 6</td>
<td>£2,461</td>
<td>£2,625</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.5</td>
<td>178</td>
<td>37.3</td>
<td>92.8</td>
<td>M3AA 200MLA 6</td>
<td>£3,953</td>
<td>£4,117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>212</td>
<td>43</td>
<td>93.3</td>
<td>M3AA 225SMA 6</td>
<td>£4,753</td>
<td>£5,117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>290</td>
<td>56.8</td>
<td>94.1</td>
<td>M3AA 225SMA 6</td>
<td>£6,976</td>
<td>£7,687</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37</td>
<td>357</td>
<td>68</td>
<td>94.4</td>
<td>M3AA 250SMA 6</td>
<td>£6,790</td>
<td>£7,400</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45</td>
<td>434</td>
<td>85.5</td>
<td>93.7</td>
<td>M3AA 280SMA 6</td>
<td>£7,596</td>
<td>£8,109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55</td>
<td>531</td>
<td>105</td>
<td>94.1</td>
<td>M3AA 280SMB 6</td>
<td>£8,765</td>
<td>£9,375</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Efficiency full load 100%
Low voltage AC motors
General performance motors

What is a general performance motor? These motors combine convenience and easy handling seamlessly with ABB’s engineering expertise, while at the same time providing standard variants and modifications. The motors can be tailored according to the specific needs of OEMs. The high modularity enables adding a wide variety of elements to the robust frame, thus making the overall solution to fit the specific situation and customer need perfectly. As the user only pays for the enhancements needed and used, the motors are free from all unnecessary elements.

Highlights
- Variant codes which OEM customers need
- One year warranty
- IE3
- 2, 4 & 6 pole

Where can it be used?
- End-users in various industries
- Tailored serial project OEM
- Pumps
- Fans
- Compressors
Low voltage AC motors

General performance cast iron motors

132-355, 2, 4 & 6 poles

TEFC low voltage motors, cast iron, IP55, IC 411, single-speed. 400 V 3-phase 50 Hz

See product catalogues or www.abb.com/motors&generators for more information on products.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Output kW</th>
<th>Torque Nm</th>
<th>Current A</th>
<th>Eff*</th>
<th>Frame size</th>
<th>Foot price</th>
<th>Flange price</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0.37</td>
<td>1.25</td>
<td>0.87</td>
<td>3.7</td>
<td>M2BAX 71MC 2</td>
<td>£173</td>
<td>£189</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.55</td>
<td>1.87</td>
<td>1.27</td>
<td>5.5</td>
<td>M2BAX 71MLA 2</td>
<td>£178</td>
<td>£199</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.75</td>
<td>2.5</td>
<td>1.68</td>
<td>7.5</td>
<td>M2BAX 80MC 2</td>
<td>£235</td>
<td>£256</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1</td>
<td>3.7</td>
<td>2.3</td>
<td>12.0</td>
<td>M2BAX 80MLA 2</td>
<td>£297</td>
<td>£341</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>4.9</td>
<td>3.1</td>
<td>17.5</td>
<td>M2BAX 90SB 2</td>
<td>£352</td>
<td>£398</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2</td>
<td>7.2</td>
<td>4.6</td>
<td>24.4</td>
<td>M2BAX 90SLA 2</td>
<td>£436</td>
<td>£481</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>9.8</td>
<td>5.5</td>
<td>33.9</td>
<td>M2BAX 100LKA 2</td>
<td>£531</td>
<td>£589</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>13.2</td>
<td>7.3</td>
<td>46.5</td>
<td>M2BAX 112MB 2</td>
<td>£627</td>
<td>£688</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.5</td>
<td>17.9</td>
<td>10.8</td>
<td>58.0</td>
<td>M2BAX 125SMA 2</td>
<td>£822</td>
<td>£900</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.5</td>
<td>24.7</td>
<td>13.2</td>
<td>73.5</td>
<td>M2BAX 125SME 2</td>
<td>£1,042</td>
<td>£1,124</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>38.6</td>
<td>21.3</td>
<td>90.6</td>
<td>M2BAX 160MLA 2</td>
<td>£1,425</td>
<td>£1,552</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>58.0</td>
<td>31.3</td>
<td>109.0</td>
<td>M2BAX 160MLB 2</td>
<td>£2,004</td>
<td>£2,146</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.5</td>
<td>77.0</td>
<td>41.3</td>
<td>135.8</td>
<td>M2BAX 180MLA 2</td>
<td>£2,586</td>
<td>£2,763</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>97.0</td>
<td>51.3</td>
<td>154.0</td>
<td>M2BAX 180MLB 2</td>
<td>£3,168</td>
<td>£3,363</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>135.6</td>
<td>71.3</td>
<td>192.0</td>
<td>M2BAX 200MLA 2</td>
<td>£3,851</td>
<td>£4,081</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37</td>
<td>184.5</td>
<td>95.3</td>
<td>235.5</td>
<td>M2BAX 200MLB 2</td>
<td>£4,533</td>
<td>£4,849</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45</td>
<td>242.6</td>
<td>129.3</td>
<td>290.0</td>
<td>M2BAX 225SMA 2</td>
<td>£5,215</td>
<td>£5,572</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55</td>
<td>300.8</td>
<td>167.3</td>
<td>350.0</td>
<td>M2BAX 225SMB 2</td>
<td>£6,097</td>
<td>£6,552</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>75</td>
<td>401.0</td>
<td>222.3</td>
<td>450.0</td>
<td>M2BAX 250SMA 2</td>
<td>£7,189</td>
<td>£7,703</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90</td>
<td>501.2</td>
<td>281.3</td>
<td>540.0</td>
<td>M2BAX 280SMB 2</td>
<td>£8,472</td>
<td>£9,062</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>110</td>
<td>621.5</td>
<td>351.3</td>
<td>660.0</td>
<td>M2BAX 315SMB 2</td>
<td>£10,055</td>
<td>£10,747</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>132</td>
<td>782.0</td>
<td>420.3</td>
<td>820.0</td>
<td>M2BAX 355SMB 2</td>
<td>£12,647</td>
<td>£13,477</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>150</td>
<td>962.5</td>
<td>500.3</td>
<td>1000.0</td>
<td>M2BAX 400SMB 2</td>
<td>£15,239</td>
<td>£16,187</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Efficiency full load 100%
Low voltage AC motors
Explosive atmospheres

There are systems in place worldwide to classify explosive atmospheres by zones, according to the risk posed by explosive gas (‘G’) or dust (‘D’).

Classification of explosive atmospheres according to CENELEC and IEC

The following standards define areas according to the presence of gas or dust in the atmosphere:

IEC/EN 60079-10-1 Gas
IEC/EN 60079-10-2 Dust

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard IEC 60079-0 EN 60079-0</th>
<th>EPL</th>
<th>Protection level</th>
<th>Installation Zone acc. to IEC 60079-10-x EN 60079-10-x Zones</th>
<th>Atex Directive 94/9/EC Equipment group</th>
<th>Equipment category</th>
<th>Main motor Protection Types</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Group</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>I (Mines)</td>
<td>M1</td>
<td>NA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>Ma</td>
<td>very high</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>M1</td>
<td>NA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>Ga</td>
<td>very high</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>II</td>
<td>1G</td>
<td>NA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Gas)</td>
<td>Gb</td>
<td>high</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>II</td>
<td>2G</td>
<td>Ex d/Ex de, Ex p, Ex e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Gc</td>
<td>enhanced</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>II</td>
<td>3G</td>
<td>Ex nA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>Da</td>
<td>very high</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>II</td>
<td>1D</td>
<td>NA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Dust)</td>
<td>Db</td>
<td>high</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>II</td>
<td>2D</td>
<td>Ex t, IP 65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dc</td>
<td>enhanced</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>II</td>
<td>3D</td>
<td>Ex t, IP 65/IP 55</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Low voltage AC motors
Explosive atmospheres

To ensure equipment can be safely used in potentially explosive atmospheres, the explosive atmospheres where the equipment is installed must be known. The temperature class of equipment must be compared with the spontaneous ignition the equipment of the gas mixtures concerned, and in specific cases the gas group must be known (e.g. flame proof protection).

Gas classification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Temperature class</th>
<th>Ignition temp. of gas/ vapour °C</th>
<th>Max. permitted temp. of equipment °C</th>
<th>Gas examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>T1</td>
<td>&gt;450</td>
<td>450</td>
<td>Hydrogen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2</td>
<td>&gt;300 &lt;450</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>Ethanol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3</td>
<td>&gt;200 &lt;300</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>Hydrogen sulfide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4</td>
<td>&gt;135 &lt;200</td>
<td>135</td>
<td>Dethyl ether</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T5</td>
<td>&gt;100 &lt;135</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T6</td>
<td>&gt;85 &lt;100</td>
<td>85</td>
<td>Carbon sulfide</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Gas subdivision

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>II A</th>
<th>- 120 gases and vapours, e.g. butane/petroleum/propane</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>II B</td>
<td>- 30 gases and vapours, e.g. ethylene/dimethyl ether/coke oven gas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II C</td>
<td>- three gases: hydrogen H₂/acetylene C₂H₂/carbon disulfide CS₂</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Marking of equipment protection for gas according to ATEX

CE Conformity marking

CE marking

Identification of the notified body responsible for the approval. 0081 is the identification number of LCIE.

The European Commission mark for Ex products.

Equipment grouping: II for surface industry.

Equipment category: 2G for gas environment demanding a high level of protection.

Equipment protection marking for gas:

Ex d  IIB T4 Gb

Protection type Ex d = flameproof
Equipment grouping IIB for gas group B
Temperature class T4 = max. permitted 135°C
Equipment protection level = level b for gas

Marking of equipment protection for gas according to IEC

Example for gas:

Ex d  IIB T4 Gb

Protection type Ex d = flameproof
Equipment grouping IIB for gas group B
Temperature class T4 = max. permitted 135°C
Equipment protection level = level b for gas.
## Low voltage AC motors

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Output kW</th>
<th>Torque Nm</th>
<th>Current A</th>
<th>Eff.</th>
<th>Frame size</th>
<th>Foot price</th>
<th>Flange price</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0.75</td>
<td>2.5</td>
<td>1.59</td>
<td>80.1</td>
<td>M3JP/KP 80MA 2</td>
<td>£771</td>
<td>£820</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1</td>
<td>3.7</td>
<td>2.2</td>
<td>81.6</td>
<td>M3JP/KP 80MB 2</td>
<td>£808</td>
<td>£885</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>5.0</td>
<td>3.2</td>
<td>82</td>
<td>M3JP/KP 90LA 2</td>
<td>£893</td>
<td>£969</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2</td>
<td>7.3</td>
<td>4.3</td>
<td>83.7</td>
<td>M3JP/KP 90LC 2</td>
<td>£1,059</td>
<td>£1,126</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.0</td>
<td>9.9</td>
<td>5.7</td>
<td>84.6</td>
<td>M3JP/KP 100LA 2</td>
<td>£1,121</td>
<td>£1,197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.0</td>
<td>13.2</td>
<td>7.5</td>
<td>86</td>
<td>M3JP/KP 112MB 2</td>
<td>£1,300</td>
<td>£1,485</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.5</td>
<td>18.1</td>
<td>10.3</td>
<td>87</td>
<td>M3JP/KP 132SM 2</td>
<td>£1,619</td>
<td>£1,701</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.5</td>
<td>24.6</td>
<td>13.5</td>
<td>89.2</td>
<td>M3JP/KP 132SM 2</td>
<td>£2,062</td>
<td>£2,130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.2</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>16.7</td>
<td>86.9</td>
<td>M3JP/KP 132SM 2</td>
<td>£2,505</td>
<td>£2,577</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.0</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>19.9</td>
<td>90.1</td>
<td>M3JP/KP 160MLA 2</td>
<td>£2,385</td>
<td>£2,555</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.0</td>
<td>49</td>
<td>26.8</td>
<td>91.2</td>
<td>M3JP/KP 160MLB 2</td>
<td>£2,826</td>
<td>£2,946</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.5</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>32.4</td>
<td>91.6</td>
<td>M3JP/KP 160MLC 2</td>
<td>£3,215</td>
<td>£3,302</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22.0</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>38.7</td>
<td>91.2</td>
<td>M3JP/KP 180MLD 2</td>
<td>£3,742</td>
<td>£3,883</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30.0</td>
<td>97</td>
<td>52.3</td>
<td>92.5</td>
<td>M3JP/KP 180MLB 2</td>
<td>£4,745</td>
<td>£4,882</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39.0</td>
<td>114</td>
<td>61.4</td>
<td>92.8</td>
<td>M3JP/KP 200MLC 2</td>
<td>£6,375</td>
<td>£6,709</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45.0</td>
<td>146</td>
<td>76.8</td>
<td>93.3</td>
<td>M3JP/KP 200MLE 2</td>
<td>£8,599</td>
<td>£8,964</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.0</td>
<td>182</td>
<td>94.8</td>
<td>93.8</td>
<td>M3JP/KP 225SM 2</td>
<td>£9,922</td>
<td>£10,175</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>75.0</td>
<td>260</td>
<td>154.4</td>
<td>94.4</td>
<td>M3JP/KP 250SM 2</td>
<td>£16,979</td>
<td>£17,202</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90.0</td>
<td>289</td>
<td>154.6</td>
<td>94.6</td>
<td>M3JP/KP 280SM 2</td>
<td>£16,231</td>
<td>£16,650</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>110.0</td>
<td>353</td>
<td>186.5</td>
<td>95.1</td>
<td>M3JP/KP 315SM 2</td>
<td>£19,174</td>
<td>£19,524</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>132.0</td>
<td>432</td>
<td>228.9</td>
<td>95.4</td>
<td>M3JP/KP 355SM 2</td>
<td>£21,444</td>
<td>£22,139</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>160.0</td>
<td>513</td>
<td>272.6</td>
<td>95.4</td>
<td>M3JP/KP 400LA 2</td>
<td>£26,459</td>
<td>£27,386</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200.0</td>
<td>641</td>
<td>335.5</td>
<td>95.7</td>
<td>M3JP/KP 400LA 2</td>
<td>£36,083</td>
<td>£36,782</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>250.0</td>
<td>800</td>
<td>423.7</td>
<td>95.6</td>
<td>M3JP/KP 500LA 2</td>
<td>£44,450</td>
<td>£45,671</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>315.0</td>
<td>1009</td>
<td>534.8</td>
<td>95.7</td>
<td>M3JP/KP 500LA 2</td>
<td>£54,214</td>
<td>£55,258</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>350.0</td>
<td>1136</td>
<td>608.7</td>
<td>95.7</td>
<td>M3JP/KP 555ML 2</td>
<td>£58,049</td>
<td>£59,267</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>400.0</td>
<td>1281</td>
<td>677.2</td>
<td>96.9</td>
<td>M3JP/KP 555ML 2</td>
<td>£64,496</td>
<td>£65,717</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>450.0</td>
<td>1441</td>
<td>743.1</td>
<td>97.1</td>
<td>M3JP/KP 555ML 2</td>
<td>£72,167</td>
<td>£73,386</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>500.0</td>
<td>1601</td>
<td>802.6</td>
<td>96.9</td>
<td>M3JP/KP 555LA 2</td>
<td>£84,019</td>
<td>£85,240</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>550.0</td>
<td>1790</td>
<td>914.6</td>
<td>97.2</td>
<td>M3JP/KP 600LA 2</td>
<td>£93,956</td>
<td>£95,699</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>600.0</td>
<td>1920</td>
<td>970.4</td>
<td>97.5</td>
<td>M3JP/KP 600LA 2</td>
<td>£99,961</td>
<td>£101,782</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Notes:

- **IE2**
- **Exd/e**
- **IIB**
- **T4**

For more information on products, see the product catalogues or [www.abb.com/motors&generators](http://www.abb.com/motors&generators).
## Low voltage AC motors

Flameproof motors, 80-450, 6 & 8+ poles

**Exd/e**  IIB T4

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Output kW</th>
<th>Torque Nm</th>
<th>Current A</th>
<th>Eff†</th>
<th>Frame size</th>
<th>Foot price</th>
<th>Flange price</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0.18</td>
<td>2.4</td>
<td>1.07</td>
<td></td>
<td>M3JP/KP 80MA 6</td>
<td>£785</td>
<td>£653</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.25</td>
<td>3.4</td>
<td>1.15</td>
<td></td>
<td>M3JP/KP 80MB 6</td>
<td>£827</td>
<td>£691</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.37</td>
<td>5.1</td>
<td>1.31</td>
<td></td>
<td>M3JP/KP 90SLA 6</td>
<td>£847</td>
<td>£919</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.55</td>
<td>7.6</td>
<td>1.91</td>
<td></td>
<td>M3JP/KP 90SLD 6</td>
<td>£831</td>
<td>£1,005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.75</td>
<td>9.9</td>
<td>2.6</td>
<td></td>
<td>M3JP/KP 100LA 8</td>
<td>£1,021</td>
<td>£1,098</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1</td>
<td>14.6</td>
<td>3.7</td>
<td></td>
<td>M3JP/KP 100LB 8</td>
<td>£1,332</td>
<td>£1,403</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>20.1</td>
<td>5.3</td>
<td></td>
<td>M3JP/KP 112MC 8</td>
<td>£1,408</td>
<td>£1,498</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2</td>
<td>29.2</td>
<td>6.1</td>
<td></td>
<td>M3JP/KP 132SMC 8</td>
<td>£1,891</td>
<td>£1,976</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4</td>
<td>63.7</td>
<td>10.3</td>
<td></td>
<td>M3JP/KP 160MLA 8</td>
<td>£2,282</td>
<td>£2,458</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.5</td>
<td>107.1</td>
<td>18.0</td>
<td></td>
<td>M3JP/KP 180MLB 8</td>
<td>£3,272</td>
<td>£3,407</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.5</td>
<td>154.6</td>
<td>27.9</td>
<td></td>
<td>M3JP/KP 200MLC 8</td>
<td>£3,767</td>
<td>£3,918</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.5</td>
<td>228.9</td>
<td>40.7</td>
<td></td>
<td>M3JP/KP 225MLC 8</td>
<td>£4,898</td>
<td>£5,075</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.5</td>
<td>348.9</td>
<td>62.0</td>
<td></td>
<td>M3JP/KP 250MLA 8</td>
<td>£6,658</td>
<td>£6,841</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.5</td>
<td>537.8</td>
<td>102.8</td>
<td></td>
<td>M3JP/KP 315MLA 8</td>
<td>£10,887</td>
<td>£11,151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.5</td>
<td>732.1</td>
<td>154.7</td>
<td></td>
<td>M3JP/KP 355MLA 8</td>
<td>£12,600</td>
<td>£12,847</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25.5</td>
<td>926.7</td>
<td>284.1</td>
<td></td>
<td>M3JP/KP 400MLA 8</td>
<td>£14,394</td>
<td>£14,652</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31.5</td>
<td>1200.0</td>
<td>450.0</td>
<td></td>
<td>M3JP/KP 400MLB 8</td>
<td>£16,164</td>
<td>£16,430</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35.5</td>
<td>1543.9</td>
<td>632.9</td>
<td></td>
<td>M3JP/KP 400MLC 8</td>
<td>£17,957</td>
<td>£18,242</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40.5</td>
<td>1909.6</td>
<td>863.0</td>
<td></td>
<td>M3JP/KP 400MLC 8</td>
<td>£20,750</td>
<td>£21,037</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45.5</td>
<td>2277.0</td>
<td>1124.9</td>
<td></td>
<td>M3JP/KP 450MLA 8</td>
<td>£25,438</td>
<td>£25,756</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.5</td>
<td>2694.0</td>
<td>1528.8</td>
<td></td>
<td>M3JP/KP 450MLB 8</td>
<td>£28,125</td>
<td>£28,462</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55.5</td>
<td>3101.0</td>
<td>2304.7</td>
<td></td>
<td>M3JP/KP 450MLC 8</td>
<td>£30,907</td>
<td>£31,268</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60.5</td>
<td>3508.0</td>
<td>2801.8</td>
<td></td>
<td>M3JP/KP 450MLC 8</td>
<td>£33,690</td>
<td>£34,059</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65.5</td>
<td>3915.0</td>
<td>3498.8</td>
<td></td>
<td>M3JP/KP 450MLC 8</td>
<td>£36,472</td>
<td>£36,842</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70.5</td>
<td>4322.0</td>
<td>4195.8</td>
<td></td>
<td>M3JP/KP 450MLC 8</td>
<td>£39,255</td>
<td>£39,625</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>75.5</td>
<td>4729.0</td>
<td>4902.8</td>
<td></td>
<td>M3JP/KP 450MLC 8</td>
<td>£41,037</td>
<td>£41,409</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Note: *JP* = IP55, *KP* = IEC 544, *Ex* = ATEX certified

### Efficiency Table

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Output kW</th>
<th>Torque Nm</th>
<th>Current A</th>
<th>Eff†</th>
<th>Frame size</th>
<th>Foot price</th>
<th>Flange price</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0.37</td>
<td>3.7</td>
<td>1.29</td>
<td></td>
<td>M3JP/KP 80MA 6</td>
<td>£784</td>
<td>£583</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.55</td>
<td>7.5</td>
<td>1.75</td>
<td></td>
<td>M3JP/KP 80MB 6</td>
<td>£830</td>
<td>£587</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.75</td>
<td>11.3</td>
<td>2.9</td>
<td></td>
<td>M3JP/KP 90SLA 6</td>
<td>£855</td>
<td>£911</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1</td>
<td>15.1</td>
<td>3.7</td>
<td></td>
<td>M3JP/KP 90SLC 6</td>
<td>£898</td>
<td>£940</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>21.9</td>
<td>5.9</td>
<td></td>
<td>M3JP/KP 100LA 6</td>
<td>£940</td>
<td>£989</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2</td>
<td>31.7</td>
<td>8.4</td>
<td></td>
<td>M3JP/KP 112MC 6</td>
<td>£1,175</td>
<td>£1,239</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.4</td>
<td>63.9</td>
<td>16.7</td>
<td></td>
<td>M3JP/KP 132SMC 6</td>
<td>£1,859</td>
<td>£1,924</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.5</td>
<td>93.4</td>
<td>22.8</td>
<td></td>
<td>M3JP/KP 132SMC 6</td>
<td>£1,941</td>
<td>£2,082</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.5</td>
<td>140.1</td>
<td>33.6</td>
<td></td>
<td>M3JP/KP 160MLA 6</td>
<td>£2,400</td>
<td>£2,520</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.5</td>
<td>217.5</td>
<td>51.3</td>
<td></td>
<td>M3JP/KP 180MLB 6</td>
<td>£3,164</td>
<td>£3,304</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.5</td>
<td>334.8</td>
<td>81.2</td>
<td></td>
<td>M3JP/KP 225MLC 6</td>
<td>£4,219</td>
<td>£4,353</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.5</td>
<td>452.1</td>
<td>112.6</td>
<td></td>
<td>M3JP/KP 250MLA 6</td>
<td>£5,767</td>
<td>£5,918</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25.5</td>
<td>599.3</td>
<td>187.5</td>
<td></td>
<td>M3JP/KP 315MLA 6</td>
<td>£8,623</td>
<td>£8,876</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35.5</td>
<td>846.4</td>
<td>276.7</td>
<td></td>
<td>M3JP/KP 355MLA 6</td>
<td>£11,897</td>
<td>£12,150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45.5</td>
<td>1103.5</td>
<td>362.9</td>
<td></td>
<td>M3JP/KP 400MLA 6</td>
<td>£14,080</td>
<td>£14,334</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Note: *JP* = IP55, *KP* = IEC 544, *Ex* = ATEX certified

### Additional Information

- **Exd/e** IIB T4 Flameproof motors, 80-450, 6 & 8+ poles. See product catalogues or [www.abb.com/motors&generators](http://www.abb.com/motors&generators) for more information on products.
### Low voltage AC motors

#### Optional extras for low voltage AC motors

Please note, ABB general performance motors have limited optional extras (see extras marked with *).
Select motor from the ABB process performance range when additional extras are required.

- **R** = On request
- **S** = Standard
- **N** = Not available

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option description</th>
<th>Modification code</th>
<th>Motor types</th>
<th>80</th>
<th>90</th>
<th>100</th>
<th>112</th>
<th>125</th>
<th>132</th>
<th>160</th>
<th>180</th>
<th>200</th>
<th>225</th>
<th>250</th>
<th>280</th>
<th>315</th>
<th>355</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Auxiliary terminal box for accessories</td>
<td>418</td>
<td>●</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>364</td>
<td>364</td>
<td>364</td>
<td>364</td>
<td>364</td>
<td>364</td>
<td>364</td>
<td>364</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>418</td>
<td>■</td>
<td>364</td>
<td>364</td>
<td>364</td>
<td>364</td>
<td>364</td>
<td>364</td>
<td>364</td>
<td>364</td>
<td>364</td>
<td>364</td>
<td>364</td>
<td>364</td>
<td>364</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>British Standard sliderails*</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>●</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>115</td>
<td>115</td>
<td>115</td>
<td>115</td>
<td>157</td>
<td>157</td>
<td>289</td>
<td>289</td>
<td>484</td>
<td>484</td>
<td>890</td>
<td>889</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>80</td>
<td>■</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>115</td>
<td>115</td>
<td>115</td>
<td>115</td>
<td>157</td>
<td>157</td>
<td>289</td>
<td>289</td>
<td>484</td>
<td>484</td>
<td>890</td>
<td>889</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Degree of Protection IP56*</td>
<td>403</td>
<td>●</td>
<td>246</td>
<td>246</td>
<td>246</td>
<td>307</td>
<td>307</td>
<td>307</td>
<td>351</td>
<td>351</td>
<td>351</td>
<td>351</td>
<td>351</td>
<td>351</td>
<td>351</td>
<td>385</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>403</td>
<td>■</td>
<td>246</td>
<td>246</td>
<td>246</td>
<td>307</td>
<td>307</td>
<td>307</td>
<td>351</td>
<td>351</td>
<td>351</td>
<td>351</td>
<td>351</td>
<td>351</td>
<td>351</td>
<td>351</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Degree of Protection IP65</td>
<td>158</td>
<td>●</td>
<td>246</td>
<td>246</td>
<td>246</td>
<td>312</td>
<td>312</td>
<td>312</td>
<td>398</td>
<td>398</td>
<td>398</td>
<td>398</td>
<td>398</td>
<td>398</td>
<td>398</td>
<td>398</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>158</td>
<td>■</td>
<td>246</td>
<td>246</td>
<td>246</td>
<td>312</td>
<td>312</td>
<td>312</td>
<td>398</td>
<td>398</td>
<td>398</td>
<td>398</td>
<td>398</td>
<td>398</td>
<td>398</td>
<td>398</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>External earth bolt*</td>
<td>67</td>
<td>●</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>122</td>
<td>122</td>
<td>122</td>
<td>122</td>
<td>119</td>
<td>119</td>
<td>119</td>
<td>119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>67</td>
<td>■</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>122</td>
<td>122</td>
<td>122</td>
<td>122</td>
<td>119</td>
<td>119</td>
<td>119</td>
<td>119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Foot and face mounting*</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>●</td>
<td>130</td>
<td>130</td>
<td>130</td>
<td>169</td>
<td>169</td>
<td>169</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8</td>
<td>■</td>
<td>94</td>
<td>94</td>
<td>94</td>
<td>136</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Foot and flange mounting*</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>●</td>
<td>130</td>
<td>130</td>
<td>130</td>
<td>169</td>
<td>169</td>
<td>169</td>
<td>322</td>
<td>322</td>
<td>427</td>
<td>427</td>
<td>467</td>
<td>467</td>
<td>696</td>
<td>696</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9</td>
<td>■</td>
<td>94</td>
<td>94</td>
<td>94</td>
<td>136</td>
<td>136</td>
<td>266</td>
<td>266</td>
<td>380</td>
<td>380</td>
<td>414</td>
<td>414</td>
<td>402</td>
<td>402</td>
<td>696</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frequency converter rating plate.</td>
<td>163</td>
<td>●</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rating data according to quotation</td>
<td>163</td>
<td>■</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heating element specify 120 V or 240 V*</td>
<td>450/451</td>
<td>●</td>
<td>234</td>
<td>234</td>
<td>234</td>
<td>261</td>
<td>261</td>
<td>261</td>
<td>315</td>
<td>315</td>
<td>315</td>
<td>348</td>
<td>348</td>
<td>444</td>
<td>533</td>
<td>474</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>450/451</td>
<td>■</td>
<td>234</td>
<td>234</td>
<td>234</td>
<td>261</td>
<td>261</td>
<td>261</td>
<td>315</td>
<td>315</td>
<td>315</td>
<td>348</td>
<td>348</td>
<td>444</td>
<td>533</td>
<td>474</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Insulated bearing at NDE. Frame 280 and above on variable-speed drives.*</td>
<td>701</td>
<td>●</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>1127</td>
<td>1127</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>701</td>
<td>■</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>1127</td>
<td>1127</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metal fan</td>
<td>68</td>
<td>●</td>
<td>150</td>
<td>150</td>
<td>150</td>
<td>210</td>
<td>210</td>
<td>210</td>
<td>303</td>
<td>303</td>
<td>303</td>
<td>326</td>
<td>326</td>
<td>342</td>
<td>342</td>
<td>550</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>68</td>
<td>■</td>
<td>145</td>
<td>145</td>
<td>145</td>
<td>208</td>
<td>208</td>
<td>208</td>
<td>269</td>
<td>269</td>
<td>269</td>
<td>287</td>
<td>287</td>
<td>303</td>
<td>303</td>
<td>303</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metal fan cover</td>
<td>53</td>
<td>●</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>139</td>
<td>139</td>
<td>139</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>53</td>
<td>■</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paint colour to standard RAL specify RAL no.*</td>
<td>114</td>
<td>●</td>
<td>215</td>
<td>215</td>
<td>215</td>
<td>210</td>
<td>210</td>
<td>210</td>
<td>257</td>
<td>257</td>
<td>257</td>
<td>257</td>
<td>257</td>
<td>257</td>
<td>250</td>
<td>250</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>114</td>
<td>■</td>
<td>215</td>
<td>215</td>
<td>215</td>
<td>210</td>
<td>210</td>
<td>210</td>
<td>257</td>
<td>257</td>
<td>257</td>
<td>257</td>
<td>257</td>
<td>257</td>
<td>250</td>
<td>250</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PT100 resistance element one per phase</td>
<td>445</td>
<td>●</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>634</td>
<td>634</td>
<td>623</td>
<td>623</td>
<td>623</td>
<td>623</td>
<td>922</td>
<td>922</td>
<td>922</td>
<td>922</td>
<td>922</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>445</td>
<td>■</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>634</td>
<td>634</td>
<td>623</td>
<td>623</td>
<td>623</td>
<td>623</td>
<td>922</td>
<td>922</td>
<td>922</td>
<td>922</td>
<td>922</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PTC thermistors, three in series, 150°C others on request*</td>
<td>436</td>
<td>●</td>
<td>131</td>
<td>131</td>
<td>131</td>
<td>169</td>
<td>169</td>
<td>169</td>
<td>246</td>
<td>246</td>
<td>246</td>
<td>246</td>
<td>246</td>
<td>246</td>
<td>212</td>
<td>212</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>436</td>
<td>●</td>
<td>131</td>
<td>131</td>
<td>131</td>
<td>169</td>
<td>169</td>
<td>169</td>
<td>246</td>
<td>246</td>
<td>246</td>
<td>246</td>
<td>246</td>
<td>246</td>
<td>212</td>
<td>212</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Low voltage AC motors
Optional extras for low voltage AC motors

Please note, ABB general performance motors have limited optional extras (see extras marked with *).
Select motor from ABB process performance range when additional extras are required.

\[ R = \text{On request} \]
\[ S = \text{Standard} \]
\[ N = \text{Not available} \]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option description</th>
<th>Modification code</th>
<th>Motor types</th>
<th>80</th>
<th>90</th>
<th>100</th>
<th>112</th>
<th>120</th>
<th>132</th>
<th>160</th>
<th>180</th>
<th>200</th>
<th>225</th>
<th>250</th>
<th>280</th>
<th>315</th>
<th>355</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rain canopy for VI mounting*</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>●</td>
<td>111</td>
<td>111</td>
<td>111</td>
<td>127</td>
<td>127</td>
<td>145</td>
<td>167</td>
<td>175</td>
<td>235</td>
<td>290</td>
<td>349</td>
<td>412</td>
<td>614</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5</td>
<td>■</td>
<td>111</td>
<td>111</td>
<td>111</td>
<td>127</td>
<td>127</td>
<td>145</td>
<td>167</td>
<td>175</td>
<td>235</td>
<td>290</td>
<td>349</td>
<td>412</td>
<td>614</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Restamping voltage, frequency and output, continuous duty*</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>●</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td>■</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roller bearing at DE (not available on IIC motors)*</td>
<td>37</td>
<td>●</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>257</td>
<td>295</td>
<td>335</td>
<td>368</td>
<td>427</td>
<td>367</td>
<td>367</td>
<td>536</td>
<td>536</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>37</td>
<td>■</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>257</td>
<td>295</td>
<td>335</td>
<td>368</td>
<td>427</td>
<td>367</td>
<td>367</td>
<td>536</td>
<td>536</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Separate (fixed speed) motor cooling fan</td>
<td>183</td>
<td>●</td>
<td>382</td>
<td>382</td>
<td>382</td>
<td>927</td>
<td>927</td>
<td>1151</td>
<td>1311</td>
<td>1837</td>
<td>2160</td>
<td>2519</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>158</td>
<td>■</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>1010</td>
<td>1213</td>
<td>1513</td>
<td>1622</td>
<td>1622</td>
<td>1908</td>
<td>2226</td>
<td>2409</td>
<td>3030</td>
<td>3289</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SPM nipples</td>
<td>43</td>
<td>●</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>155</td>
<td>155</td>
<td>261</td>
<td>293</td>
<td>327</td>
<td>337</td>
<td>337</td>
<td>329</td>
<td>329</td>
<td>329</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>43</td>
<td>■</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>155</td>
<td>155</td>
<td>261</td>
<td>293</td>
<td>327</td>
<td>337</td>
<td>337</td>
<td>329</td>
<td>329</td>
<td>329</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test - routine*</td>
<td>148</td>
<td>●</td>
<td>208</td>
<td>208</td>
<td>208</td>
<td>236</td>
<td>236</td>
<td>236</td>
<td>236</td>
<td>236</td>
<td>236</td>
<td>236</td>
<td>236</td>
<td>236</td>
<td>235</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>148</td>
<td>■</td>
<td>208</td>
<td>208</td>
<td>208</td>
<td>236</td>
<td>236</td>
<td>236</td>
<td>236</td>
<td>236</td>
<td>236</td>
<td>236</td>
<td>236</td>
<td>236</td>
<td>235</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test - Type test report from test of an identical motor (where available)*</td>
<td>145</td>
<td>●</td>
<td>88</td>
<td>88</td>
<td>88</td>
<td>88</td>
<td>88</td>
<td>88</td>
<td>88</td>
<td>88</td>
<td>88</td>
<td>88</td>
<td>125</td>
<td>125</td>
<td>125</td>
<td>176</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>145</td>
<td>■</td>
<td>88</td>
<td>88</td>
<td>88</td>
<td>88</td>
<td>88</td>
<td>88</td>
<td>88</td>
<td>88</td>
<td>88</td>
<td>88</td>
<td>125</td>
<td>125</td>
<td>176</td>
<td>176</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Alloy  ●  Cast Iron  ■
Low voltage AC motors
NEMA motors

General purpose industrial motors
Three-phase, totally enclosed, foot mounted
- 1/8 – 400 HP
- NEMA 42 – 449T

Applications
Pumps, compressors, fans, conveyors, machine tools and other general purpose three-phase applications.

Features
Suitable for mounting in any position. Ball bearings, heavy-gauge steel and cast-iron frames, and gasketed conduit boxes. Class F insulation, 1.15 service factor, low-loss electrical grade lamination steel. EM Super-E® motors have NEMA Premium® efficiency and three years warranty. Motors with TR suffix have roller bearings for heavy belted loads.

Severe duty motors
Three-phase, totally enclosed, foot mounted
- 1 – 400 HP
- NEMA 143T – 449T

Applications
Petrochemical plants, mines, foundries, pulp and paper plants, waste management facilities, chemical plants, tropical climates and other processing industry applications requiring protection against corrosion caused by severe environmental operating conditions.

Features
ECP motors are XEX designs. 1.15 service factor, corrosion resistant epoxy finish, regreasable ball or roller bearings, oversized rotatable cast iron conduit box, cast iron frames, V-ring shaft seal, moisture resistant copper windings. Class F insulation, stainless steel nameplate and corrosion resistant hardware. ECP/XEX Super-E® motors have NEMA Premium® efficiency and three years warranty. Positive lubrication system (PLS) on 360 frames and larger.

Explosion-proof motors
Single and three-phase, foot mounted
- 1/4 – 300 HP
- NEMA 48 – 449T

Applications
Ideal for use where hazardous fumes or dust may be present.

Features
UL and CSA approved for Division 1, Class I, Group D; Class I, Group D, Class II Group F & G; Class I, Group C & D, Class II, Group F & G. Corrosion resistant epoxy finish. Shipped with UL. and CSA approved cast conduit box assembled to each motor. 1.00 service factor. EM Super-E® explosion proof motors have NEMA Premium® efficiency and three years warranty.
Low voltage AC motors
Central motor stock, Mod Express® line, Menden, Germany

ABB’s European logistics centre in Menden, Germany offers customers on-time and just-in-time delivery on a wide range of ABB products.

The 23,000 square metre facility has 45,000 automated parts bins and stocks over 2.5 million ABB items including parts and accessories.

NEMA motors are in stock at the facility and include:

- NEMA general purpose
- ECP XEX severe duty
- IEEE841 totally enclosed severe duty and speciality motors.

NEMA general purpose TEFC motors are basic protection motors used on pump and fan applications and have a protection similar to the European IP44 rating.

The NEMA ECP XEX severe duty TEFC motors are suited to tougher industrial operating environments and are protected similar to IP54.

The IEEE841 specification, totally enclosed severe duty motors are protected similar to IP56.

Among those motors stocked in Menden are 2-pole and 4-pole variants, with various mounting styles available including foot mounted, C-face mounted and C-face footless options. The speciality motors include a selection of Baldor permanent magnet DC motors.

NEMA motors are now available within 48 hours from ABB’s central European stockholding in Germany.

NEMA general purpose motors
- 1/3 through 250 HP, 0.25 kW to 187 kW

IEEE841 standard severe duty motors
- 1 through 250 HP, 0.75 kW to 187 kW

Modifications to NEMA motors, certified to CSA standards, can be carried out by ABB at its European logistics centre in Germany for distribution across Europe.

The motor build centre, called the Mod Express® line, carries out modifications to NEMA general purpose, severe duty and IEEE 841 severe duty motors held in stock. General purpose and IEEE severe duty motors are available with foot mount, C-face foot and C-face footless options and severe duty motors stocked with foot mounted options.

ABB’s European logistics centre in Germany is fully equipped with a secure storage facility, access to fast-track air freight dispatch and has an export packaging option through the Mod Express® line, giving an all-in-one facility for immediate NEMA motor dispatch.

A dedicated exports team ensure that all the correct paperwork is supplied with the motor to allow on-time delivery worldwide without Customs delays.

ABB is the only supplier able to deliver a customised NEMA motor from local stock with full accreditation to CSA anywhere in the world.

The modifications available for these motors include:

- Installation of thermistors
- Thermal protection sensors
- Bearing upgrades
- Conduit box modifications
- Tropicalisation
- Customised paint finishes
- Nameplate modification
AC motors
High voltage
Overview

Engineered rib-cooled motor NXR
- 100 kW to 1,800 kW
- 315 to 500 frame size
- New platform for HV rib-cooled motors
- High efficiency levels, low noise levels
- Fixed-speed, variable-speed and safe area use

Engineered rib-cooled motor HXR
- 100 kW to 2,250 kW
- 355 to 560 frame size
- High efficiency levels, low noise levels
- Fixed-speed, variable-speed and hazardous area use
AC motors
High voltage
Overview

Modular induction motors
- Built from the basic design by using modular construction
- Complete range of enclosures and cooling arrangements
- Optimal weight to power ratio
  - 140 kW to 23,000 kW
  - 400 – 1000 frame size

Flameproof motors Ex d
- Motor intended for explosive atmosphere
- Protection category according to EN/IEC Flameproof Ex d, Ex de
- Totally-enclosed, fan-cooled
- Cooling methods: IC411 and IC511
- Both cast-iron and welded steel frame available
- Certified according to ATEX directives, IEC, EN and NEMA standards and all major local requirements
- Suitable for variable-speed drives
  - 160 kW to 8,000 kW
  - 355 – 900 frame size
## Motors and generators service and PC tools

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Product</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MotorAdvantage</td>
<td>108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DriveSize &amp; MotSize</td>
<td>109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optimizer, ABB MACHsense-P</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ABB MACHsense-R and LEAP</td>
<td>111</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
MotorAdvantage aims to encourage industry to uncover the true cost of running electric motors. Research by ABB reveals that UK industry is failing to efficiently manage its motor inventory, thereby incurring millions of pounds of unnecessary downtime, repair and energy costs.

MotorAdvantage is aimed at companies operating a continuous process such as those found in food & beverage, chemical, oil & gas and pharmaceuticals. Such processes tend to have critical applications, whereby if a motor fails the cost to a company can be hundreds of pounds per hour in lost revenue. It is not just the loss of production but the potential loss of the company’s customer.

**How it works**
There are three stages to MotorAdvantage:

1. **Consultation**
   During the consultation process ABB examines the installed motor asset register for the plant and, working with the local engineers, identifies up to five critical applications that are running either continuously or for more than 4,000 hours per annum. They then determine some basic information about these motors such as:
   - How old are the installed motors?
   - How efficient are the installed motors?
   - How many hours do they run per annum?
   - Have they been rewound before?
   - What spares holding do you have for critical plant?
   - What is your repair/rewind policy for ‘failed’ motors?

   ABB also engages with the plant’s process engineers to determine the exact design criteria for the various processes. This gives ABB a clearer understanding of how the process is meant to operate and its critical design operating points, thereby ensuring that a properly dimensioned motor is selected should a replacement be deemed necessary.

2. **The Appraisal**
   An ABB engineer, or one of ABB’s Authorised Value Providers partners, visits the end-user to inspect the selected motors, get an understanding of the plant, the inventory of spare motors, energy and maintenance plans. It is not unusual to find that an old motor can be 1-5 percent lower in efficiency compared to a new premium efficiency variant. If that motor is running continuously then you can achieve a typical payback of between two to three years should you wish to take the decision to scrap the motor prior to failure.

   If the motor is replaced at the point of failure then taking the rewind cost into the payback calculation, the new motor cost can be recovered in less than 12 months. Bear in mind that many rewound motors will only have a six month warranty of the repaired components whilst a new premium efficiency motor from ABB comes with a three year warranty.

3. **Proving the savings – report and recommendations**
   Following the collection of the data, the findings are analysed and potential savings identified using dedicated software. The findings are methodically presented, with tables being created to help identify where savings are likely to arise. Among the data available includes an estimation of present energy usage; whether the application would benefit from variable-speed control; payback time if an investment is made in new motors; carbon dioxide emission reductions; along with many other key facts and analysis.

   An action plan is prepared, usually comprising an Executive Summary and a detailed Engineer’s Report, highlighting applications that can save the most. The figures will normally be translated into monthly savings, and there will be detailed recommendations for implementation.

**Benefits**
- In just half-a-day, an ABB engineer can assess up to five installed motors that could benefit from a motor management plan
- Examines the end-users current policy in the event of a motor failure and the financial impact on the company
- Identifies improvements to be made with regards to maintenance and stockholding
- Determines the energy use of the current installation
Motors and generators service and PC tools
DriveSize & MotSize

DriveSize
DriveSize is a software tool that helps users select an optimum motor, drive and transformer especially for applications where straightforward selection from a catalogue is not possible.

DriveSize can also compute current, network harmonics and create dimensioning documents based on actual load parameters. DriveSize is available to use online via the ABB website or can be downloaded for use on a PC. For system requirements see:

http://new.abb.com/drives/software-tools/drivesize

DriveSize contains a current version of the ABB motor and drives catalogue and allows users to import their own motor database. The default values make DriveSize simple to use with ample options for drive selection.

The software performs dimensioning based on the following input:
- Speed range and mechanical load with overloads
- Ambient temperature and altitude
- Required IP-class and allowed temperature rise
- Supply network characteristics
- Load type and duty cycle
- Optionally current requirements for inverter unit
- Optionally current requirements for transformer
- Apparent power requirement for the transformer

The software enables you to:
- Calculate the network harmonics of individual drive or set of drives
- Obtain efficiency values
- See your selection in graphical or numeric form
- Select manually an optional unit from database
- Print reports in Excel
- Save the results into XML project files
- Import your own motor database

Benefit
- Select an optimal motor, frequency converter and transformer
- Dimensioning based on actual shaft load
- Documents dimensioning results, graphical and numerical presentation
- Network harmonic and power factor calculation
- Print and save the results

MotSize
MotSize is a selection tool that helps users to select an optimal direct-on-line (DOL) motor from the low voltage motors catalogue. Additionally, MotSize allows users to dimension motors for specific application requirements.

MotSize functions
The software performs dimensioning based on the following data:
- Ambient conditions
- Altitude
- Requirements for a temperature rise
- Supply network data
- Load type and duty cycle

The following single-speed and/or two-speed motor types are included:
- General purpose motors:
  - Aluminium, cast iron, steel, open drip proof, brake
- Process performance motors:
  - Cast iron, aluminium
- Marine motors:
  - Aluminium, cast iron, steel, open drip proof
- Hazardous area motors:
  - Non-sparking aluminium, cast iron motors
  - Increased safety aluminium, cast iron motors
  - Flameproof cast iron motors
  - Dust ignition proof aluminium, cast iron motors

The software can handle imperial as well as metric units, all technical data is updated regularly.

The software also enables you to:
- Specify starting conditions
- Rest current, power, voltage and frequency
- Obtain rating data as well as data with partial load
- Choose the language for the printouts
- Print-out technical data sheets and graphs

Benefit
- Select an optimal motor, frequency converter and transformer
- Dimensioning based on actual shaft load
- Documents dimensioning results, graphical and numerical presentation
- Network harmonic and power factor calculation
- Print and save the results
Motors and generators service and PC tools
Optimizer, ABB MACHsense-P

Optimizer
ABB’s Optimizer is an online tool that can quickly select the optimum motor for any minimum energy performance standard (MEPS) worldwide.

Motor users can select motors, compare running costs and get further documents about their motors and work out the cost of ownership.

Optimizer gives users eight drop down selection menus.
1. MEPS area (e.g. EU, United States)
2. Efficiency class (IE2, IE3 etc)
3. Frame material
4. Motor range
5. Voltage
6. Frequency
7. Speed
8. Power output

Once the required characteristics are selected, the tool presents a list of suitable motors. Selecting EU MEPS, IE3, dust ignition proof motors, 400 V, 50 Hz, all poles and outputs, returns a list of 49 suitable motors. They can be compared by running cost, payback periods, life cycle savings and reduction in greenhouse gas emission.

Optimizer automatically suggests, a higher efficiency motor and highlights savings realised by upgrading. Test reports, drawings, data sheets and other documents can be accessed quickly and easily for the selected motors. Documents can be opened on screen, saved or exported as a zip file.

Optimizer can be downloaded from the Apple store for iPad use by searching for ‘ABB Optimizer’.

For more information about Optimizer call the ABB motors team on 07000 MOTORS, that’s 07000 668677

ABB MACHsense-P
Regular health checks help to maintain maximum performance over entire life cycle

ABB MACHsense-P is a condition monitoring service that addresses the reliability of the complete shaft line, including the motor, gearbox and driven load (pump, fan or compressor). It identifies electrical and mechanical issues related to the rotor, bearings, gearbox and other components – problems which account for a major percentage of total failures.

Key benefits:
– Instant summary report, with a full report after detailed analysis
– Earlier warnings and more comprehensive diagnosis than conventional solutions
– Vibration and electrical measurements are processed in a single software platform to avoid false positives and negatives
– Advanced software delivers a high degree of accuracy
– Collection of vibration data over wider frequency range covers greater number of potential problems
– Testing is done with the motor in its operating condition, so no preparatory work is necessary
– Optimised cost of ownership
**ABB MACHsense-R**
Continuous, remote monitoring with instant alarms and expert follow-up

ABB MACHsense-R continuously monitors key condition parameters specific to the type of motor being monitored. ABB MACHsense-R can identify nascent fault conditions at an earlier stage than conventional methods. Shaft line monitoring can be implemented with MACHsense-R.

Customers can access operating data and trend graphs via the internet. An alarm is triggered if a measured parameter exceeds set limits, giving the plant operator an early warning that maintenance is needed.

**Key benefits:**
- Motor or generator is constantly monitored during operation
- Model based analysis increases reliability of defect identification and quantifies defect severity
- Motor and generator design and construction taken into account for higher precision
- Multi-channel operation and fast data collection rates increase sensitivity
- On-board processing reduces volume of data transmitted to server for lower communication costs
- Authorised customers can quickly access motor or generator specific data on ABB’s server
- Customers can receive regular reports on condition of their motors and generators
- Unplanned downtime is reduced, resulting in optimised cost of ownership

**ABB LEAP**
Life Expectancy Analysis Program (LEAP) for motors and generators

ABB Life Expectancy Analysis Program or ABB LEAP is a diagnostic tool for assessing the condition of the stator winding insulation in electric machines.

ABB LEAP goes further than conventional health monitoring programmes for rotating electrical machines, which typically use green, yellow and red LEDs, or similar to express the results. ABB has evolved this methodology to a new level: ABB LEAP analysis provides precise information on the remaining lifetime of the stator winding. Based on this, specific service actions can be planned well ahead. This method drastically reduces unplanned shutdowns caused by the failures due to factors such as thermal, electrical, ambient, or mechanical aging.

**Key benefits:**
- Optimises maintenance planning for electrical machines by moving from time based to condition based maintenance
- Supports efforts to extend machine lifetime, boosting return on investment (ROI)
- Facilitates decision making for short and long term maintenance and run-replace decisions
- Minimises unplanned downtime and reduces risk levels
- Provides information for lifecycle cost estimation

**Condition monitoring solution for low voltage motors**
ABB’s smart sensor picks up data on vibration, temperature and other parameters and uses it to reduce motor downtime by up to 70 percent, extend lifetime by as much as 30 percent and lower energy use by up to 10 percent. The compact sensor that is attached to the frame of low voltage induction motors. No wiring is needed. Utilising Cloud based analytics, the smart sensor relays information about the motor’s health, via a smartphone and over the internet, to a secure server. Historical information and trends are visible from a dedicated customer portal that provides status information on the entire population of motors that have been smart enabled.
## Mechanical power transmission

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gearings</td>
<td>114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mounted bearings</td>
<td>115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roller bearings</td>
<td>116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Couplings</td>
<td>117</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
For well over a century, Dodge products have helped manufacturers, OEMs and producers increase the productivity and profitability of their operations. ABB has added new warehouse space to stock Dodge mechanical power transmission products, which ensures they are quickly accessible when you need them.

### Torque-Arm II

- All reducers can be shaft mounted: screw conveyor, vertical, and flange mounted
- Up to 294 kW
- Up to 56,500 Nm
- Standard 5, 9, 15, 25, and up to 40:1 gear ratios
- Nearly 300:1 speed reduction with V-belt drives
- Twin-tapered bushing bores: 25 mm through 160 mm
- Highly efficient helical gearing
- Meets or exceeds AGMA standards, including 5,000 hours L10 life and 25,000 average hour life
- New heavy duty lip seals for extended wear life, -40 - 138°C
- 100 percent factory noise and leak tested
- New metal shield sealing system with excluder lip
- AGMA output torque ratings up to 56,500 Nm

### Quantis

- Inline helical (ILH), right angle helical bevel (RHB), motorised shaft mount (MSM)
- 0.75 kW - 56 kW up to 14,000 Nm
- Ratios, 1.5:1 - 300:1
- 8 case sizes per housing configuration, clamp collar, 3-piece coupled, integral gearmotor, separate input. Solid, straight hollow output – ILH/MSM efficiency of 98 percent per stage, RHB efficiency of 95 percent per stage
- All units shipped filled with oil from the factory and are installation ready
- Optional XT harsh duty seal for operation in wet and dirty environments
- Class 30 grey iron housings cast with internal ribbing for added strength
- Options include washdown and screw conveyor configurations

### MagnaGearXTR®

- Parallel shaft or right angle configurations available
- Torque capacities from 32 - 104 kNm available
- Global product design to fit all markets
- Multiple mounting configurations available (base mounting, swing base mounting, tunnel housings)
- Can be used with a variety of soft start mechanisms including VSD and fluid couplings
When it comes to reliable service and low maintenance, ABB Dodge® mounted ball bearings are unmatched in the industry. ABB Dodge mounted ball bearings are available in any of our proven locking devices: our exclusive 65° setscrew locking system, our patented Grip Tight adapter mounted, eccentric locking collars and D-Lok™ concentric clamp locking system mounted ball bearing.

Setscrew ball bearings

- Superior 65° locking setscrew
- DualGuard seal – comprised of single lip seal and rubberised flinger
- Stronger, more flexible bearing cage
- Optimum balance between locking forces
- Heat stabilised nylon construction with an inner ring stress fiber-glass reinforcement
- Secure fit to the shaft

Grip Tight® ball bearings

- Two types: normal duty GT and medium duty GTM
- DualGuard seal – comprised of single lip seal and rubberised flinger
- Thin wall adapter mounting offers 360° full shaft contact and concentricity. No shaft
- Marring or fretting corrosion like setscrew and eccentric collar products. Integral dismount feature easily removes the bearing from the shaft. Turned, ground and polished shafting is not required
- Anti-rotation device prevents insert rotation associated with heavy loads, vibration, unbalanced loads and high-speed applications
- High-temperature option available to 204 °C
- Plus or minus 2° static misalignment

Ultra Kleen®, E-Z Kleen®

- Reinforced polymer and stainless steel housings
- Patented polymer housing includes-antimicrobial agent which resists bacterial and fungus growth - two inserts: corrosion resistant and stainless steel insert
- Three locking devices: 65° setscrew angle (SC), Grip Tight adapter mount and concentric clamp collar (D-Lok).
- Quadguard seal: comprised of our triple lip seal and rubberised flinger. Additional grease retention provided by the maxlife cage
- Anti-rotation device prevents insert rotation associated with heavy loads, vibration, unbalanced loads and high-speed applications - plus or minus 2° static misalignment
Mechanical power transmission
Roller bearings

For decades, industry’s leading producers have depended on ABB Dodge® roller bearings to handle their conveyance and power transmission needs. ABB Dodge bearings offer innovative designs; a wide range of shaft attachment methods, rolling elements, housings and seal choices, patented features and consistent performance.

ISN spherical roller bearings
- The only push/pull adapter mount system
- Available in two-bolt pillow blocks
- Accepts commercial shaft tolerances
- Installation and removal in fewer than 15 minutes
- Fully concentric shaft attachment with adapter sleeve mount
- Virtually eliminates fretting corrosion
- Capable of withstanding static or dynamic misalignment of ±1° - shaft-ready out of the box - available with Trident triple lip or labyrinth seal options
- Sizes range from 30 mm through 170 mm
- SN mounting dimensions

Type E-xtra® tapered roller bearings
- Tapered rolling elements
- Completely assembled, factory adjusted and properly lubricated
- Shaft ready
- Extra protection
- E-Tect seal option - comparable mounting dimensions with ball bearings
- E-xtra allows easy upgrade from ball bearings
**Elastomeric, sleeve style - ABB Dodge D-Flex couplings**

Three-way flexing action handles shock, vibration and misalignment. The ABB Dodge D-Flex™ coupling features moulded, non-lubricated, interchangeable elastomeric sleeves of EPDM, neoprene Hytrel. Its three-way flexing action accommodates torsional, angular and parallel misalignment, as well as axial end float.

**Elastomeric, tyre style - ABB Dodge Para-Flex**

ABB Dodge Para-Flex elements are manufactured with reinforcing fabric tension cords that transmit much of the torque during operation.

The uniform and centred bead in the foot of the tyre element prevents it from pulling out during operation. Additionally, the tyre element is reinforced at the split to reduce fatigue and extend life.

ABB Dodge Para-Flex elements provide accommodation of shaft misalignment during installation, running-time and replacement better than other elastomeric elements.

With an industry-leading combined 4° angular, 3.17 mm (1/8 in.) parallel and 7.93 mm (5/16 in.) end-float capability, Para-Flex couplings will perform in difficult applications and reduce valuable time needed for installation and maintenance.

**Metallic, grid style - ABB Dodge Grid-Lign**

Compact in size, yet high in torque capability, ABB Dodge Grid-Lign couplings are available in a variety of sizes, in standard and spacer styles. Every coupling features two steel shaft hubs, a tapered grid element, two seals and a cover assembly. Its versatile design allows for a motor or reducer output speed connection and its speed capability ranges up to 6,000 rpm dependant on size. ABB Dodge Grid-Lign is available in T31 and T35 spacer designs up to size 1200T. This spacer offering can be used as a spacer coupling, or mounted to a brake disc or drum.

The ABB Dodge Grid-Lign coupling’s tapered grid element is engineered with high-strength, spring steel that is quenched and tempered. This feature helps isolate vibration and cushions shock loads. In addition, it allows uniform contact during light, normal and shock-loading conditions for long machine life.
Useful engineering information

Reference information and explanation of abbreviations

Degrees of protection
As defined by IEC34-5 and BSA999 pt 105, the code generally consists of ‘IP’ followed by two digits: the first describing the protection against solid bodies or protection to persons against contact with live or moving parts inside the enclosure; the second describing the protection against ingress of water.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>First Digit</th>
<th>Meaning (Protection Against)</th>
<th>Second Digit</th>
<th>Meaning (Protection Against)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>Not protected</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Not protected</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>50mm dia. body</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Vertical drips</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>12mm dia. body</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Drips up to 15° from vertical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>2.5mm dia. body</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Drips up to 60° from vertical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>1mm dia. body</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Splashing from any direction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Dust protected</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>Water jets from any direction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Dust tight</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Heavy seas (Does not cover corrosion resistance etc)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Effects of immersion</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Cooling forms
As defined by IEC34-6 and BS4999 pt.106, the code generally consists of ‘IC’ followed by two digits; the first describing the cooling circuit arrangement; the second describing the method of supplying power to circulate the coolant. Where more than one cooling circuit is in use, these may be expressed as ‘IC’ followed by groups of two digits, e.g. IC0141.

The following forms are used in this catalogue:

IC410 – Typical examples are roller table motors
IC411 – Standard motors
IC416 – Standard motors (normally bigger frame sizes only equipped with auxiliary fan)
IC418 – Fan application motors without a cooling fan, cooled by the air stream of the driven machine
IC01 – Open drip-proof motors
IC31W – Water cooled motors

Mounting forms
The arrangements are defined by IEC34-7, BS4999 pt. 107 code II (and DIN42950). The following forms are used in this catalogue and are for motors with two bearings housed in end-shields. When flange mounting they have access to the back of the flange.

IM1001 (B3) Horizontal foot mounted
IM1011 (V5) Vertical foot mounted
IM3001 (B5) Horizontal flange mounted
IM3011 (V1) Vertical flange mounted
IM2001 (B35) Horizontal foot & flange mounted
IM1071 (B8) Horizontal foot, ceiling mounted

Note for gearbox users – service factor
The geared motors covered by this catalogue are rated for driven machines with a uniform load for continuous duty or occasional moderate shock loading on single-shift operation, being known as a Unity Service Factor. For applications with short-time duty, high inertia or heavy shock loads, advice should be sought on calculating the correct service factor and selecting the most suitable gearbox type.

Abbreviations

Electrical data
Kilowatt = kW
Volts = V
Armature Volts = Va
Field Volts = Vf
Amperes = A
Armature Current = Ia
Field Current = If
Power factor = PF

Useful conversion factors
1 hp = 746 W
1 Nm = 8.851 lb.in
1 mm = 0.03937 inch
1 m² = 10.765 ft²
1 kg.m² = 1 Nms² = 0.73752 lb.ft²

Useful formulae
1 Watt = 1 Nm/s
Torque (lb ft) = 5250 x hp / speed (rpm)
Torque (Nm) = 9550 x kW / speed (rpm)
3 phase = 1.732 x V x I x PF
AC power (kW) = 1000
1 phase = V x I x PF
AC power (kW) = 1000

Useful servo drive calculations
Correctly rating a servo motor and drive application often involves mechanical calculations. Overleaf are typical examples of some of the commonly occurring formula that are often encountered. These are provided for general guidance only and any results may need to be modified to take into account specific application details such as mechanical losses, inclined angles and duty cycles etc.
Useful engineering information

Reference information and explanation of abbreviations

Time to accelerate a rotating mass
\[ M(\text{acc}) = \text{Accelerate torque, Nm} \]
\[ J(\text{tot}) = \text{Total inertia, kgm}^2 \]
\[ J(\text{mot}) = \text{Motor inertia, kgm}^2 \]
\[ J(\text{load}) = \text{Load Inertia, kgm}^2 \]
\[ Z = \text{Gearbox ratio (speed reducing)} \]
\[ t(\text{acc}) = \text{Acceleration time, sec} \]
\[ \alpha = \text{Angular acceleration, rad.sec}^{-2} \]
\[ \omega = \text{Angular speed, rad.sec}^{-1} \]
\[ n = \text{Angular speed, rpm} \]
\[ M(\text{acc}) = J(\text{tot}) \alpha \text{ or } \alpha = M(\text{acc})/J(\text{tot}) \]
\[ \omega = \pi/t(\text{acc}) \text{ or } t(\text{acc}) = \pi/\alpha \]
\[ J(\text{tot}) = J(\text{mot}) + (J(\text{load})/Z^2) \]

Example
\[ J(\text{load}) = 0.05 \text{ kgm}^2 \]
\[ J(\text{mot}) = 5.0 \text{ kgcm}^2 (= 0.00050 \text{kgm}^2) \]
\[ Z = 30:1 \]
\[ n = 1500 \text{ rpm} \]
\[ M(\text{acc}) = 15 \text{ Nm} \]
\[ J(\text{tot}) = 0.00050 + (0.5/30^2) \]
\[ J(\text{tot}) = 0.00106 \text{ kgm}^2 \]
\[ \alpha = M(\text{acc})/J(\text{tot}) \]
\[ \alpha = 15/0.00106 \]
\[ \alpha = 14,150 \text{ rad.sec}^{-2} \]
\[ \omega = (1500/60) \times 2\pi \]
\[ \omega = 157 \text{ rad.sec}^{-1} \]
\[ t(\text{acc}) = \omega/\alpha \]
\[ t(\text{acc}) = 157/14,150 \]
\[ t(\text{acc}) = 0.0111 \text{ sec (11.1mS)} \]

Solid cylinder rotating about axis XX
\[ J = (mR^2)/2 \]

Hollow cylinder rotating about axis XX
\[ J = m(R^2 + r^2)/2 \]

Equivalent inertia of slide mass on a ballscrew
\[ J = m(s/2\pi)^2 \]

Effect of gear ratio on reflected inertia
\[ J = J(\text{load})/Z^2 \]

Torque required to produce a force on a leadscrew
\[ M = \text{Required torque, Nm} \]
\[ F = \text{Linear force, N} \]
\[ Z = \text{Gearbox ratio (speed reducing)} \]
\[ (Z = 1 \text{ for direct drive}) \]
\[ s = \text{Ballscrew pitch, m} \]
\[ \eta = \text{Efficiency} \]
\[ M = Fs/2\pi R\eta \]

Example
\[ F = 10,000 \text{ N} \]
\[ s = 10 \text{ mm (0.01 m)} \]
\[ Z = 2:1 \]
\[ \eta = 0.9 \]

Required motor torque \( M = (10,000 \times 0.01)/ \]
\[ (2\pi \times 2 \times 0.9) \]
\[ = 8.85 \text{ Nm} \]

NB: The required force is often provided in kg’s or kgf. This implies the force exerted on the mass by gravity (g) and must be multiplied by 9.81 to obtain the force in N (newtons); eg A “force” of 100 kg is 981 N.

Useful inertia formula
Servo drives are often employed in highly dynamic applications where rapid and accurate positioning is required. To obtain the ultimate performance in any system, the reflected load inertia (taking into account any gearbox or pulley ratios) should equal the motor inertia. This is often not possible, but ratio mismatches of typically 5:1 are not normally significant. The greater this mismatch between reflected load inertia and motor inertia, the lower will be the dynamic performance of the system.
Note
We reserve the right to make technical changes or modify the contents of this document without prior notice. The prices contained within this document are indicative at the time of publication and are subject to validation at the time of purchase. With regard to purchase orders, the agreed particulars shall prevail. ABB does not accept any responsibility whatsoever for potential errors or possible lack of information in this document.

We reserve all rights in this document and in the subject matter and illustrations contained therein. Any reproduction, disclosure to third parties or utilization of its contents – in whole or in parts – is forbidden without prior written consent of ABB.

Copyright© 2017 ABB - All rights reserved

Printed in the UK